



# Doctrine ORM for PHP

## Guide to Doctrine for PHP

Doctrine 1.0

*License: Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 3.0 Unported License*

*Version: manual-1.0-en-2009-02-13*

# Table of Contents

<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>13</b>
What is Doctrine? .....	13
What is an ORM? .....	13
What is the Problem? .....	13
Minimum Requirements .....	14
Basic Overview .....	14
Doctrine Explained .....	15
Key Concepts .....	16
Further Reading .....	17
Conclusion .....	17
<b>Getting Started .....</b>	<b>18</b>
Checking Requirements.....	18
Installing .....	18
Sandbox .....	19
SVN.....	19
Installing .....	19
Updating .....	20
SVN Externals .....	20
PEAR Installer .....	20
Download Pear Package .....	20
Implementing.....	21
Including Doctrine Libraries .....	21
Require Doctrine Base Class .....	21
Register Autoloader.....	22
Autoloading Explained.....	22
Bootstrap File .....	23
Test Script .....	23
Conclusion .....	24
<b>Introduction to Connections.....</b>	<b>25</b>
DSN, the Data Source Name .....	25
Examples .....	27
Opening New Connections .....	27
Lazy Database Connecting .....	28
Testing your Connection.....	28
Conclusion .....	29
<b>Configuration .....</b>	<b>31</b>
Levels of Configuration.....	31
Portability .....	32
Portability Mode Attributes .....	32
Examples .....	33

Identifier quoting.....	33
Exporting .....	34
Naming convention attributes .....	35
Index name format .....	35
Sequence name format.....	36
Table name format .....	36
Database name format .....	36
Validation attributes.....	36
Validation mode constants .....	37
Examples .....	37
Optional String Syntax .....	37
Conclusion .....	38
<b>Connections .....</b>	<b>39</b>
Introduction .....	39
Opening Connections.....	39
Retrieve Connections.....	39
Current Connection .....	40
Change Current Connection .....	40
Iterating Connections .....	40
Get Connection Name.....	40
Close Connection .....	41
Get All Connections .....	41
Count Connections.....	42
Creating and Dropping Database .....	42
Conclusion .....	43
<b>Introduction to Models .....</b>	<b>44</b>
Introduction .....	44
Generating Models .....	44
Existing Databases .....	45
Making the first import.....	45
Schema Files .....	49
Manually Writing Models .....	51
Autoloading Models .....	51
Conservative .....	51
Aggressive .....	52
Conclusion .....	53
<b>Defining Models .....</b>	<b>54</b>
Columns .....	54
Column aliases.....	54
Default values.....	55
Data types.....	56
Introduction .....	56
Type modifiers .....	57
Boolean .....	57
Integer .....	58
Float.....	59
Decimal .....	59
String .....	60
Array .....	60
Object .....	61
Blob.....	61
Clob.....	62
Timestamp .....	62

Time .....	63
Date .....	63
Enum.....	64
Gzip.....	65
Examples .....	65
<b>Relationships .....</b>	<b>68</b>
Introduction.....	68
Foreign Key Associations .....	73
One to One.....	73
One to Many and Many to One.....	74
Tree Structure .....	76
Join Table Associations.....	77
Many to Many .....	77
Self Referencing (Nest Relations) .....	81
Non-Equal Nest Relations .....	81
Equal Nest Relations .....	82
Foreign Key Constraints.....	85
Introduction.....	85
Integrity Actions .....	87
<b>Indexes.....</b>	<b>88</b>
Introduction.....	88
Adding indexes .....	89
Index options .....	90
Special indexes.....	91
<b>Checks .....</b>	<b>92</b>
<b>Table Options.....</b>	<b>93</b>
<b>Transitive Persistence .....</b>	<b>94</b>
Application-Level Cascades .....	95
Save Cascades .....	95
Delete Cascades.....	95
Database-Level Cascades .....	96
<b>Conclusion .....</b>	<b>97</b>
<b>Working with Models .....</b>	<b>98</b>
Define Test Schema .....	98
Dealing with Relations.....	102
Creating Related Records .....	102
Retrieving Related Records.....	105
Updating Related Records.....	105
Deleting Related Records.....	106
Working with Related Records.....	107
Testing the Existence of a Relation .....	107
Many-to-Many Relations .....	108
Creating a New Link.....	108
Deleting a Link .....	108
Fetching Objects.....	110
Sample Queries .....	112
Field Lazy Loading .....	119
Arrays and Objects .....	120
To Array.....	120
From Array .....	120
Synchronize With Array.....	121
Overriding the Constructor .....	122
Conclusion .....	122
<b>DQL (Doctrine Query Language) .....</b>	<b>123</b>
Introduction .....	123

SELECT queries.....	125
DISTINCT keyword.....	130
Aggregate values.....	130
UPDATE queries.....	131
DELETE Queries.....	132
FROM clause.....	133
JOIN syntax.....	134
ON keyword.....	135
WITH keyword.....	136
INDEXBY keyword.....	137
WHERE clause.....	138
Conditional expressions.....	139
Literals.....	139
Input parameters.....	141
Operators and operator precedence.....	143
In expressions.....	143
Like Expressions.....	144
Exists Expressions.....	145
All and Any Expressions.....	147
Subqueries.....	148
Functional Expressions.....	150
String functions.....	150
Arithmetic functions.....	152
Subqueries.....	152
Introduction.....	152
Comparisons using subqueries.....	152
GROUP BY, HAVING clauses.....	153
ORDER BY clause.....	156
Introduction.....	156
Sorting by an aggregate value.....	157
Using random order.....	157
LIMIT and OFFSET clauses.....	158
Driver Portability.....	158
The limit-subquery-algorithm.....	159
Named Queries.....	160
Creating a Named Query.....	161
Accessing Named Query.....	161
Executing a Named Query.....	162
Cross-Accessing Named Query.....	162
BNF.....	162
Magic Finders.....	166
Debugging Queries.....	167
Conclusion.....	168
<b>Component Overview.....</b>	<b>169</b>
Manager.....	169
Retrieving Connections.....	169
Connection.....	170
Available Drivers.....	170
Creating Connections.....	170
Flushing the Connection.....	171
Table.....	171
Getting a Table Object.....	171
Getting Column Information.....	172

Getting Relation Information.....	173
Finder Methods .....	174
Custom Table Classes .....	176
Custom Finders .....	176
Record.....	177
Properties .....	177
Updating Records.....	181
Replacing Records.....	182
Refreshing Records .....	182
Refreshing relationships.....	183
Deleting Records .....	185
Using Expression Values .....	185
Getting Record State .....	186
Getting Object Copy .....	187
Saving a Blank Record .....	188
Mapping Custom Values.....	188
Serializing.....	188
Checking Existence .....	189
Function Callbacks for Columns .....	189
Collection.....	189
Accessing Elements .....	190
Adding new Elements.....	190
Getting Collection Count .....	191
Saving the Collection.....	192
Deleting the Collection.....	192
Key Mapping.....	192
Loading Related Records .....	193
Validator .....	195
More Validation .....	195
Valid or Not Valid .....	197
Implicit Validation .....	197
Explicit Validation.....	197
Profiler .....	198
Basic Usage .....	199
Locking Manager.....	199
Optimistic Locking .....	199
Pessimistic Locking .....	200
Examples .....	200
Technical Details .....	201
Views.....	201
Using Views .....	201
Conclusion .....	203
<b>Native SQL .....</b>	<b>204</b>
Introduction .....	204
Component Queries .....	204
Fetching from Multiple Components.....	205
Conclusion .....	206
<b>YAML Schema Files.....</b>	<b>207</b>
Introduction .....	207
Abbreviated Syntax.....	207
Verbose Syntax .....	208
Relationships .....	208
Detect Relations .....	209

Customizing Relationships .....	209
One to One .....	210
One to Many .....	210
Many to Many .....	211
Features & Examples .....	212
Connection Binding .....	212
Attributes .....	212
Enums .....	213
ActAs Behaviors .....	213
Listeners .....	214
Options .....	214
Indexes .....	215
Inheritance .....	216
Simple Inheritance .....	216
Concrete Inheritance .....	216
Column Aggregation Inheritance .....	216
Column Aliases .....	217
Packages .....	218
Package Custom Path .....	218
Global Schema Information .....	218
Using Schema Files .....	219
Conclusion .....	220
<b>Data Validation .....</b>	<b>221</b>
Introduction .....	221
Examples .....	223
Not Null .....	223
Email .....	224
Not Blank .....	225
No Space .....	226
Past .....	227
Future .....	228
Min Length .....	229
Country .....	230
IP Address .....	231
HTML Color .....	231
Range .....	232
Unique .....	234
Regular Expression .....	235
Credit Card .....	236
Read Only .....	237
Unsigned .....	238
US State .....	239
Conclusion .....	239
<b>Inheritance .....</b>	<b>240</b>
Simple .....	240
Concrete .....	242
Column Aggregation .....	245
Conclusion .....	248
<b>Behaviors .....</b>	<b>249</b>
Introduction .....	249
Simple Templates .....	250
Templates with Relations .....	252
Delegate Methods .....	255

Creating Behaviors .....	257
Core Behaviors .....	258
Introduction .....	258
Versionable .....	258
Timestampable .....	261
Sluggable .....	262
I18n .....	264
NestedSet .....	267
Searchable .....	268
Geographical .....	269
SoftDelete .....	273
Nesting Behaviors.....	276
Generating Files .....	277
Querying Generated Classes .....	278
Conclusion .....	278
<b>Searching .....</b>	<b>279</b>
Introduction .....	279
Index structure .....	281
Index Building .....	281
Text Analyzers .....	283
Query language.....	284
Performing Searches .....	284
File searches .....	287
Conclusion .....	288
<b>Hierarchical Data.....</b>	<b>289</b>
Introduction .....	289
Nested Set .....	290
Introduction.....	290
Setting Up .....	290
Multiple Trees .....	291
Working with Trees .....	292
Creating a Root Node .....	292
Inserting a Node .....	292
Deleting a Node .....	293
Moving a Node.....	293
Examining a Node.....	294
Examining and Retrieving Siblings .....	294
Examining and Retrieving Descendants .....	295
Rendering a Simple Tree .....	296
Advanced Usage .....	296
Fetching a Tree with Relations.....	297
Rendering with Indention.....	298
Conclusion .....	299
<b>Data Fixtures.....</b>	<b>300</b>
Importing .....	300
Dumping .....	300
Implement.....	301
Writing .....	301
Fixtures For Nested Sets .....	305
Fixtures For I18n.....	306
Conclusion .....	306
<b>Database Abstraction Layer .....</b>	<b>307</b>



Export .....	307
Introduction .....	307
Creating Databases .....	308
Creating Tables .....	308
Creating Foreign Keys .....	310
Altering table .....	311
Creating Indexes .....	313
Deleting database elements .....	314
Import .....	315
Introduction .....	315
Listing Databases .....	316
Listing Sequences .....	316
Listing Constraints .....	316
Listing Table Columns .....	316
Listing Table Indexes .....	317
Listing Tables .....	317
Listing Views .....	317
DataDict .....	318
Introduction .....	318
Getting portable declaration .....	318
Getting Native Declaration .....	318
Drivers .....	319
Mysql .....	319
Setting table type .....	319
Conclusion .....	320
<b>Transactions.....</b>	<b>321</b>
Introduction .....	321
Nesting .....	322
Savepoints .....	323
Isolation Levels .....	324
Conclusion .....	325
<b>Event Listeners .....</b>	<b>326</b>
Introduction .....	326
Connection Listeners .....	327
Creating a New Listener .....	327
Attaching listeners .....	328
Pre and Post Connect .....	329
Transaction Listeners .....	329
Query Execution Listeners .....	330
Hydration Listeners .....	330
Record Listeners .....	331
Record Hooks .....	333
DQL Hooks .....	334
Chaining Listeners .....	337
The Event object .....	338
Getting the Invoker .....	338
Event Codes .....	338
Getting the Invoker .....	338
Skip Next Operation .....	339
Skip Next Listener .....	339
Conclusion .....	340
<b>Caching .....</b>	<b>341</b>

Introduction .....	341
Drivers .....	341
Memcache .....	341
APC .....	342
Db .....	342
Query Cache & Result Cache .....	343
Introduction .....	343
Query Cache .....	343
Using the Query Cache .....	343
Fine Tuning .....	344
Result Cache .....	344
Using the Result Cache .....	344
Fine Tuning .....	345
Conclusion .....	346
<b>Migrations .....</b>	<b>347</b>
Performing Migrations .....	347
Implement .....	348
Writing Migration Classes .....	348
Available Operations .....	350
Create Table .....	350
Drop Table .....	351
Rename Table .....	351
Create Constraint .....	351
Drop Constraint .....	352
Create Foreign Key .....	352
Drop Foreign Key .....	353
Add Column .....	353
Rename Column .....	353
Change Column .....	353
Remove Column .....	354
Irreversible Migration .....	354
Add Index .....	354
Remove Index .....	354
Pre and Post Hooks .....	355
Conclusion .....	356
<b>Utilities .....</b>	<b>357</b>
Pagination .....	357
Introduction .....	357
Working with Pager .....	357
Controlling Range Styles .....	360
Sliding .....	360
Jumping .....	360
Advanced layouts with pager .....	362
Mask .....	362
Template .....	362
Customizing pager layout .....	365
Facade .....	367
Creating & Dropping Databases .....	367
Convenience Methods .....	368
Tasks .....	370
Command Line Interface .....	370
Introduction .....	370
Tasks .....	371
Usage .....	371
Sandbox .....	372

Installation.....	372
Conclusion .....	372
<b>Unit Testing .....</b>	<b>373</b>
Running tests .....	373
CLI .....	373
Browser .....	374
Writing Tests .....	374
Ticket Tests .....	375
Methods for testing .....	376
Assert Equal.....	376
Assert Not Equal.....	376
Assert Identical.....	376
Assert True .....	376
Assert False .....	377
Mock Drivers .....	377
Test Class Guidelines .....	378
Test Method Guidelines.....	378
Conclusion .....	378
<b>Improving Performance .....</b>	<b>379</b>
Introduction .....	379
Compile.....	379
Conservative Fetching .....	380
Bundle your Class Files .....	382
Use a Bytecode Cache .....	383
Free Objects.....	383
Other Tips .....	384
Conclusion .....	384
<b>Technology .....</b>	<b>386</b>
Introduction .....	386
Architecture .....	386
Doctrine CORE .....	386
Doctrine DBAL.....	387
Doctrine ORM.....	387
Design Patterns Used .....	387
Speed .....	388
Conclusion .....	389
<b>Exceptions and Warnings .....</b>	<b>390</b>
Manager exceptions.....	390
Relation exceptions.....	390
Connection exceptions.....	390
Query exceptions .....	391
Conclusion .....	391
<b>Real World Examples .....</b>	<b>392</b>
User Management System.....	392
Forum Application .....	395
Conclusion .....	398
<b>Coding Standards.....</b>	<b>399</b>
PHP File Formatting .....	399
General .....	399
Indentation .....	399

Maximum Line Length.....	399
Line Termination .....	399
Naming Conventions.....	400
Classes.....	400
Interfaces.....	400
Filenames .....	400
Functions and Methods .....	400
Variables.....	401
Constants.....	401
Record Columns .....	401
Coding Style.....	402
PHP Code Demarcation .....	402
Strings .....	402
Literal String .....	402
String Containing Apostrophes .....	402
Variable Substitution .....	402
String Concatenation.....	403
Concatenation Line Breaking .....	403
Arrays .....	403
Classes.....	403
Functions and Methods .....	404
Control Statements.....	406
Inline Documentation .....	407
Conclusion .....	407

## Chapter 1

# Introduction

## What is Doctrine?

Doctrine is an object relational mapper (ORM) for PHP 5.2.3+ that sits on top of a powerful database abstraction layer (DBAL). One of its key features is the option to write database queries in a proprietary object oriented SQL dialect called Doctrine Query Language (DQL), inspired by Hibernate's HQL. This provides developers with a powerful alternative to SQL that maintains flexibility without requiring unnecessary code duplication.

## What is an ORM?

Object relational mapping is a technique used in programming languages when dealing with databases for translating incompatible data types in relational databases. This essentially allows for us to have a "virtual object database," that can be used from the programming language. Lots of free and commercial packages exist that allow this but sometimes developers chose to create their own ORM.

## What is the Problem?

We are faced with many problems when building web applications. Instead of trying to explain it all it is best to read what Wikipedia has to say about object relational mappers.

### **Pulled from Wikipedia<sup>1</sup>:**

Data management tasks in object-oriented (OO) programming are typically implemented by manipulating objects, which are almost always non-scalar values. For example, consider an address book entry that represents a single person along with zero or more phone numbers and zero or more addresses. This could be modeled in an object-oriented implementation by a "person object" with "slots" to hold the data that comprise the entry: the person's name, a list (or array) of phone numbers, and a list of addresses. The list of phone numbers would itself contain "phone number objects" and so on. The address book entry is treated as a single value by the programming language (it can be referenced by a single variable, for instance). Various methods can be associated with the object, such as a method to return the preferred phone number, the home address, and so on.

However, many popular database products such as SQL DBMS can only store and manipulate scalar values such as integers and strings organized within tables.

---

1. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Object-relational\\_mapping](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Object-relational_mapping)

The programmer must either convert the object values into groups of simpler values for storage in the database (and convert them back upon retrieval), or only use simple scalar values within the program. Object-relational mapping is used to implement the first approach.

The height of the problem is translating those objects to forms that can be stored in the database for easy retrieval, while preserving the properties of the objects and their relationships; these objects are then said to be persistent.

## Minimum Requirements

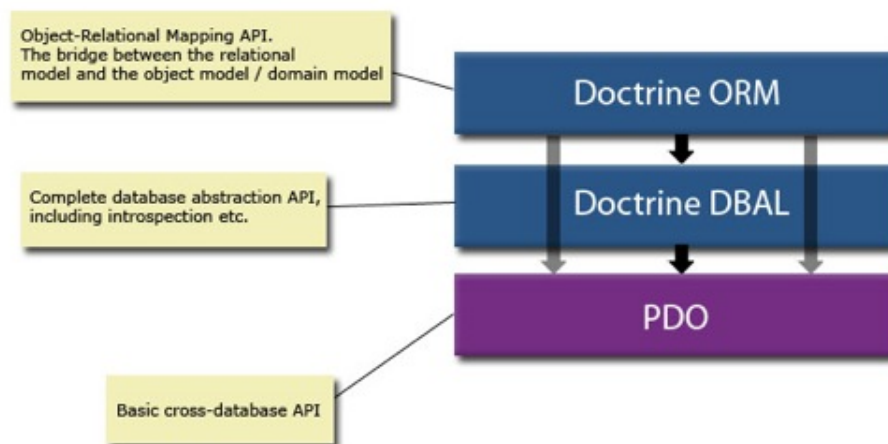
Doctrine requires PHP  $\geq 5.2.3$ , although it doesn't require any external libraries. For database function call abstraction Doctrine uses PDO which comes bundled with the PHP official release that you get from [www.php.net](http://www.php.net).



If you use a 3 in 1 package under windows like Uniform Server, MAMP or any other non-official package, you may be required to perform additional configurations.

## Basic Overview

Doctrine is a tool for object-relational mapping in PHP. It sits on top of PDO and is itself divided into two main layers, the DBAL and the ORM. The picture below shows how the layers of Doctrine work together.



The DBAL(Database Abstraction Layer) completes and extends the basic database abstraction/independence that is already provided by PDO. The DBAL library can be used standalone, if all you want is a powerful database abstraction layer on top of PDO. The ORM layer depends on the DBAL and therefore, when you load the ORM package the DBAL is already included.

## Doctrine Explained

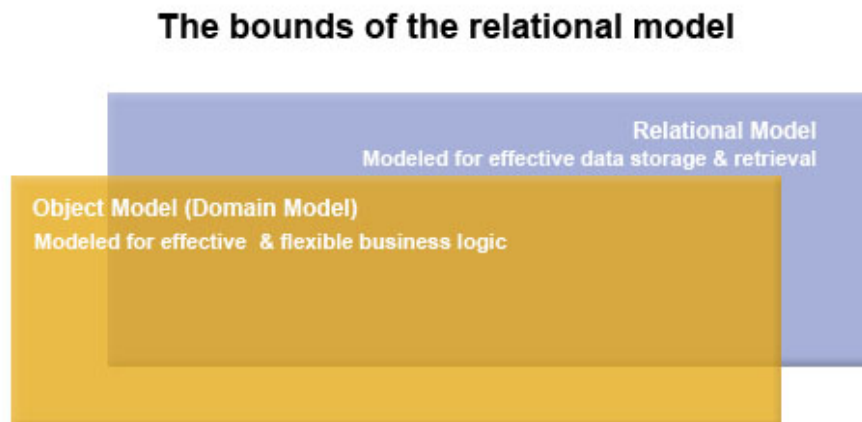
The following section tries to explain where Doctrine stands in the world of ORM tools. The Doctrine ORM is mainly built around the Active Record<sup>2</sup>, Data Mapper<sup>3</sup> and Meta Data Mapping<sup>4</sup> patterns.

Through extending a specific base class named `Doctrine_Record`, all the child classes get the typical `ActiveRecord` interface (save/delete/etc.) and it allows Doctrine to easily participate in and monitor the lifecycles of your records. The real work, however, is mostly forwarded to other components, like the `Doctrine_Table` class. This class has the typical `Data Mapper` interface, `createQuery()`, `find(id)`, `findAll()`, `findBy*()`, `findOneBy*()` etc. So the `ActiveRecord` base class enables Doctrine to manage your records and provides them with the typical `ActiveRecord` interface whilst the mapping footwork is done elsewhere.

The `ActiveRecord` approach comes with its typical limitations. The most obvious is the enforcement for a class to extend a specific base class in order to be persistent (a `Doctrine_Record`). In general, the design of your domain model is pretty much restricted by the design of your relational model. There is an exception though. When dealing with inheritance structures, Doctrine provides some sophisticated mapping strategies which allow your domain model to diverge a bit from the relational model and therefore give you a bit more freedom.

Doctrine is in a continuous development process and we always try to add new features that provide more freedom in the modeling of the domain. However, as long as Doctrine remains mainly an `ActiveRecord` approach, there will always be a pretty large, (forced) similarity of these two models.

The current situation is depicted in the following picture.



As you see in the picture, the domain model can't drift far away from the bounds of the relational model.

After mentioning these drawbacks, it's time to mention some advantages of the `ActiveRecord` approach. Apart from the (arguably slightly) simpler programming model, it turns out that the strong similarity of the relational model and the Object Oriented (OO) domain model also has an advantage: It makes it relatively easy to provide powerful generation tools, that can create a basic domain model out of an existing relational schema. Further, as the domain model can't drift far from the relational model due to the reasons above, such generation and synchronization tools can easily be used throughout the development process. Such tools are one of Doctrine's strengths.

2. <http://www.martinfowler.com/eaCatalog/activeRecord.html>

3. <http://www.martinfowler.com/eaCatalog/dataMapper.html>

4. <http://www.martinfowler.com/eaCatalog/metadatabaseMapping.html>

We think that these limitations of the ActiveRecord approach are not that much of a problem for the majority of web applications because the complexity of the business domains is often moderate, but we also admit that the ActiveRecord approach is certainly not suited for complex business logic (which is often approached using Domain-Driven Design) as it simply puts too many restrictions and has too much influence on your domain model.

Doctrine is a great tool to drive the persistence of simple or moderately complex domain models<sup>(1)</sup> and you may even find that it's a good choice for complex domain models if you consider the trade-off between making your domain model more database-centric and implementing all the mapping on your own (because at the time of this writing we are not aware of any powerful ORM tools for PHP that are not based on an ActiveRecord approach).



(1) Note that complexity  $\neq$  size. A domain model can be pretty large without being complex and vice versa. Obviously, larger domain models have a greater probability of being complex.

Now you already know a lot about what Doctrine is and what it is not. If you would like to dive in now and get started right away, jump straight to the next chapter "Getting Started".

## Key Concepts

The Doctrine Query Language (DQL) is an object query language. It lets you express queries for single objects or full object graphs, using the terminology of your domain model: class names, field names, relations between classes, etc. This is a powerful tool for retrieving or even manipulating objects without breaking the separation of the domain model (field names, class names, etc) from the relational model (table names, column names, etc). DQL looks very much like SQL and this is intended because it makes it relatively easy to grasp for people knowing SQL. There are, however, a few very important differences you should always keep in mind:

Take this example DQL query:

Listing 1-1

```
FROM User u
LEFT JOIN u.Phonenumbers where u.level > 1
```

The things to notice about this query:

- We select from **classes** and not **tables**. We are selecting from the `User` class/model.
- We join along **associations** (`u.Phonenumbers`)
- We can reference **fields** (`u.level`)
- There is no join condition (`ON x.y = y.x`). The associations between your classes and how these are expressed in the database are known to Doctrine (You need to make this mapping known to Doctrine, of course. How to do that is explained later in the Defining Models chapter.).



DQL expresses a query in the terms of your domain model (your classes, the attributes they have, the relations they have to other classes, etc.).

It's very important that we speak about classes, fields and associations between classes here. `User` is **not** a table / table name. It may be that the name of the database table that the `User` class is mapped to is indeed named `User` but you should nevertheless adhere to this differentiation of terminology. This may sound nit picky since, due to the ActiveRecord approach, your relational model is often very similar to your domain model but it's really important. The column names are rarely the same as the field names and as soon as inheritance is involved, the relational model starts to diverge from the domain model. You can



have a class `User` that is in fact mapped to several tables in the database. At this point it should be clear that talking about "selecting from the `User` table" is simply wrong then. And as Doctrine development continues there will be more features available that allow the two models to diverge even more.

## Further Reading

For people new to object-relational mapping and (object-oriented) domain models we recommend the following literature:

The books by Martin Fowler<sup>5</sup> cover a lot of the basic ORM terminology, the different approaches of modeling business logic and the patterns involved.

Another good read is about Domain Driven Design<sup>6</sup>. Though serious Domain-Driven Design is currently not possible with Doctrine, this is an excellent resource for good domain modeling, especially in complex business domains, and the terminology around domain models that is pretty widespread nowadays is explained in depth (Entities, Value Objects, Repositories, etc).

## Conclusion

Well, now that we have given a little educational reading about the methodologies and principals behind Doctrine we are pretty much ready to dive in to everything that is Doctrine.

First though, we will [doc acknowledgements acknowledge] the people who are responsible for making Doctrine what it is today. Then we will dive in to setting up Doctrine in the Getting Started chapter.

---

5. <http://www.martinfowler.com/books.html>

6. <http://domaindrivendesign.org/books/#DDD>

## Chapter 2

# Getting Started

## Checking Requirements

First we need to make sure that you can run Doctrine on your server. We can do this one of two ways:

First create a small PHP script named `phpinfo.php` and upload it somewhere on your web server that is accessible to the web:

*Listing  
2-1*

```
phpinfo();
```

Now execute it from your browser by going to <http://localhost/phpinfo.php><sup>7</sup>. You will see a list of information detailing your PHP configuration. Check that your PHP version is `>= 5.2.3` and that you have PDO and the desired drivers installed.



You can also check your PHP installation has the necessary requirements by running some commands from the terminal. We will demonstrate in the next example.

---

Check that your PHP version is `>= 5.2.3` with the following command:

*Listing  
2-2*

```
$ php -v
```

Now check that you have PDO and the desired drivers installed with the following command:

*Listing  
2-3*

```
$ php -i
```

You could also execute the `phpinfo.php` from the command line and get the same result as the above example:

*Listing  
2-4*

```
$ php phpinfo.php
```

## Installing

Currently it is possible to install Doctrine four different ways that are listed below:

---

7. <http://localhost/phpinfo.php>

- SVN (subversion)
- SVN externals
- PEAR Installer
- Download PEAR Package

It is recommended to download Doctrine via SVN (subversion), because in this case updating is easy. If your project is already under version control with SVN, you should choose SVN externals.



If you wish to just try out Doctrine in under 5 minutes, the sandbox package is recommended. We will discuss the sandbox package in the next section.

---

## Sandbox

Doctrine also provides a special package which is a zero configuration Doctrine implementation for you to test Doctrine without writing one line of code. You can download it from the download page<sup>8</sup>.



The sandbox implementation is not a recommend implementation for a production application. It's only purpose is for exploring Doctrine and running small tests.

---

## SVN

It is highly recommended that you use Doctrine via SVN and the externals option. This option is the best as you will receive the latest bug fixes from SVN to ensure the best experience using Doctrine.

### Installing

To install Doctrine via SVN is very easy. You can download any version of Doctrine from the SVN server: <http://svn.doctrine-project.org><sup>9</sup>

To check out a specific version you can use the following command from your terminal:

```
svn co http://svn.doctrine-project.org/branches/1.0 .
```

*Listing  
2-5*

If you do not have a SVN client, chose one from the list below. Find the Checkout option and enter <http://svn.doctrine-project.org/1.0><sup>10</sup> in the path or repository url parameter. There is no need for a username or password to check out Doctrine.

- TortoiseSVN<sup>11</sup> a Windows application that integrates into Windows Explorer
- svnX<sup>12</sup> a Mac OS X GUI svn application
- Eclipse<sup>13</sup> has SVN integration through the subclipse plugin<sup>14</sup>
- Versions<sup>15</sup> a subversion client for the mac

---

8. <http://www.doctrine-project.org/download>

9. <http://svn.doctrine-project.org>

10. <http://svn.doctrine-project.org/1.0>

11. <http://tortoisesvn.tigris.org/>

12. [http://www.apple.com/downloads/macosx/development\\_tools/svnX.html](http://www.apple.com/downloads/macosx/development_tools/svnX.html)

13. <http://www.eclipse.org/>

14. <http://subclipse.tigris.org/>

15. <http://versionsapp.com/>

## Updating

Updating Doctrine with SVN is just as easy as installing. Simply execute the following command from your terminal:

*Listing 2-6* `$ svn update`

## SVN Externals

If your project is already under version control with SVN, then it is recommended that you use SVN externals to install Doctrine.

You can start by navigating to your checked out project in your terminal:

*Listing 2-7* `$ cd /var/www/my_project`

Now that you are under your checked out project, you can execute the following command from your terminal and setup Doctrine as an SVN external:

*Listing 2-8* `$ svn propedit svn:externals lib/vendor`

The above command will open your editor and you need to place the following text inside and save:

*Listing 2-9* `doctrine http://svn.doctrine-project.com/branches/1.0/lib`

Now you can install Doctrine by doing an svn update:

*Listing 2-10* `$ svn update`

It will download and install Doctrine at the following path: `/var/www/my_project/lib/vendor/doctrine`



Don't forget to commit your change to the SVN externals.

---

*Listing 2-11* `$ svn commit`

## PEAR Installer

Doctrine also provides a PEAR server for installing and updating Doctrine on your servers. You can easily install Doctrine with the following command:

*Listing 2-12* `$ pear install pear.phpdoctrine.org/Doctrine-1.0.x`



Replace the above 1.0.x with the version you wish to install. For example "1.0.6".

---

## Download Pear Package

If you do not wish to install via PEAR or do not have PEAR installed, you can always just manually download the package from the website<sup>16</sup>. Once you download the package to your server you can extract it using the following command under linux.

---

16. <http://www.doctrine-project.org/download>

```
$ tar xzf Doctrine-1.0.6.tgz
```

*Listing  
2-13*

## Implementing

Now that you have Doctrine in your hands, we are ready to implement Doctrine in to our application. This is the first step towards getting started with Doctrine.

First create a directory named `doctrine_test`. This is where we will place all our test code:

```
$ mkdir doctrine_test  
$ cd doctrine_test
```

*Listing  
2-14*

## Including Doctrine Libraries

The first thing we must do is find the `Doctrine.php` file containing the core class so that we can require it in to our application. The `Doctrine.php` file is in the `lib` folder from when you downloaded Doctrine in the previous section.

We need to move the Doctrine libraries in to the `doctrine_test` directory into a folder in `doctrine_test/lib/vendor/doctrine`:

```
$ mkdir lib  
$ mkdir lib/vendor  
$ mkdir lib/vendor  
$ mv /path/to/doctrine/lib doctrine
```

*Listing  
2-15*

Or if you are using SVN, you can use externals:

```
$ svn co http://svn.doctrine-project.org/branches/1.0/lib lib/vendor/  
doctrine
```

*Listing  
2-16*

Now add it to your svn externals:

```
$ svn propedit svn:externals lib/vendor
```

*Listing  
2-17*

It will open up your editor and place the following inside and save:

```
doctrine http://svn.doctrine-project.org/branches/1.0/lib
```

*Listing  
2-18*

Now when you do SVN update you will get the Doctrine libraries updated:

```
$ svn update lib/vendor
```

*Listing  
2-19*

## Require Doctrine Base Class

We need to create a php script for bootstrapping Doctrine and all the configuration for it. Create a file named `bootstrap.php` and place the following code in the file:

```
// bootstrap.php  
  
/**  
 * Bootstrap Doctrine.php, register autoloader specify  
 * configuration attributes and load models.  
 */
```

*Listing  
2-20*

```
require_once(dirname17(__FILE__) . '/lib/vendor/doctrine/Doctrine.php');
```

## Register Autoloader

Now that we have the Doctrine class present, we need to register the class autoloader function in the bootstrap file:

Listing  
2-21

```
// bootstrap.php

// ...
spl_autoload_register18(array('Doctrine', 'autoload'));
```

Lets also create the singleton `Doctrine_Manager` instance and assign it to a variable named `$manager`:

Listing  
2-22

```
// bootstrap.php

// ...
$manager = Doctrine_Manager::getInstance();
```

## Autoloading Explained



You can read about the PHP autoloading on the php website here<sup>19</sup>. Using the autoloader allows us to lazily load classes as they are requested instead of pre-loading all classes. This is a huge benefit to performance.

The way the Doctrine autoloader works is simple. Because our class names and paths are related, we can determine the path to a Doctrine class based on its name.

Imagine we have a class named `Doctrine_Some_Class` and we instantiate an instance of it:

Listing  
2-23

```
$class = new Doctrine_Some_Class();
```

The above code will trigger a call to the `Doctrine::autoload()` function and pass it the name of the class instantiated. The class name string is manipulated and transformed in to a path and required. Below is some pseudo code that shows how the class is found and required:

Listing  
2-24

```
class Doctrine
{
    public function autoload($className)
```

17. <http://www.php.net/function.dirname>

18. [http://www.php.net/function.spl\\_autoload\\_register](http://www.php.net/function.spl_autoload_register)

19. [http://www.php.net/spl\\_autoload\\_register](http://www.php.net/spl_autoload_register)

```

    {
        $classPath = str_replace20('_', '/', $className) . '.php';
        $path = '/path/to/doctrine/' . $classPath;
        require_once($path);
        return true;
    }
}

```

In the above example the `Doctrine_Some_Class` can be found at `/path/to/doctrine/Doctrine/Some/Class.php`.



Obviously the real `Doctrine::autoload()` function is a bit more complex and has some error checking to ensure the file exists but the above code demonstrates how it works.

## Bootstrap File



We will use this bootstrap class in later chapters and sections so be sure to create it!

The bootstrap file we have created should now look like the following:

```

// bootstrap.php

/**
 * Bootstrap Doctrine.php, register autoloader specify
 * configuration attributes and load models.
 */

require_once(dirname21(__FILE__) . '/lib/vendor/doctrine/Doctrine.php');
spl_autoload_register22(array('Doctrine', 'autoload'));
$manager = Doctrine_Manager::getInstance();

```

*Listing  
2-25*

This new bootstrapping file will be referenced several times in this book as it is where we will make changes to our implementation as we learn how to use Doctrine step by step.



The configuration attributes mentioned above are a feature in Doctrine used for configuring and controlling functionality. You will learn more about attributes and how to get/set them in the Configuration chapter.

## Test Script

Now lets create a simple test script that we can use to run various tests as we learn about the features of Doctrine.

Create a new file in the `doctrine_test` directory named `test.php` and place the following code inside:

20. [http://www.php.net/function.str\\_replace](http://www.php.net/function.str_replace)
21. <http://www.php.net/function.dirname>
22. [http://www.php.net/function.spl\\_autoload\\_register](http://www.php.net/function.spl_autoload_register)

Listing  
2-26

```
// test.php

require_once('bootstrap.php');

echo Doctrine::getPath();
```

Now you can execute the test script from your command line. This is how we will perform tests with Doctrine throughout the chapters so make sure it is working for you! It should output the path to your Doctrine installation.

Listing  
2-27

```
$ php test.php
/path/to/doctrine/lib
```

## Conclusion

Phew! This was our first chapter where we actually got into some code. As you saw, first we were able to check that our server can actually run Doctrine. Then we learned all the different ways we can download and install Doctrine. Lastly we learned how to implement Doctrine by setting up a small test environment that we will use to perform some exercises in the remaining chapters of the book.

Now lets move on and get our first taste of Doctrine connections in the Introduction to Connections chapter.



## Chapter 3

# Introduction to Connections

## DSN, the Data Source Name

In order to connect to a database through Doctrine, you have to create a valid DSN(Data Source Name).

Doctrine supports both PEAR DB/MDB2 like data source names as well as PDO style data source names. The following section deals with PEAR like data source names. If you need more info about the PDO-style data source names see the documentation on pdo<sup>23</sup>.

The DSN consists in the following parts:

**DSN part    Description**

phptype	Database backend used in PHP (i.e. mysql , pgsql etc.)
dbsyntax	Database used with regards to SQL syntax etc.
protocol	Communication protocol to use ( i.e. tcp, unix etc.)
hostspec	Host specification (hostname[:port])
database	Database to use on the DBMS server
username	User name for login
password	Password for login
proto_opts	Maybe used with protocol
option	Additional connection options in URI query string format. Options are separated by ampersand (&). The Following table shows a non complete list of options:

**List of options****Name      Description**

charset	Some backends support setting the client charset.
new_link	Some RDBMS do not create new connections when connecting to the same host multiple times. This option will attempt to force a new connection.

The DSN can either be provided as an associative array or as a string. The string format of the supplied DSN is in its fullest form:

*Listing*  
3-1

23. <http://www.php.net/pdo>

```
phptype(dbsyntax)://username:password@protocol+hostspec/
database?option=value
```

Most variations are allowed:

*Listing 3-2*

```
phptype://username:password@protocol+hostspec:110//usr/db_file.db
phptype://username:password@hostspec/database
phptype://username:password@hostspec
phptype://username@hostspec
phptype://hostspec/database
phptype://hostspec
phptype:///database
phptype:///database?option=value&anotheroption=anothervalue
phptype(dbsyntax)
phptype
```

The currently supported PDO database drivers are:

Driver name	Supported databases
fbsql	FrontBase
ibase	InterBase / Firebird (requires PHP 5)
mssql	Microsoft SQL Server (NOT for Sybase. Compile PHP --with-mssql)
mysql	MySQL
mysqli	MySQL (supports new authentication protocol) (requires PHP 5)
oci	Oracle 7/8/9/10
pgsql	PostgreSQL
querysim	QuerySim
sqlite	SQLite 2

A second DSN format supported is

*Listing 3-3*

```
phptype(syntax)://user:pass@protocol(proto_opts)/database
```

If your database, option values, username or password contain characters used to delineate DSN parts, you can escape them via URI hex encodings:

Character	Hex Code
:	%3a
/	%2f
@	%40
+	%2b
(	%28
)	%29
?	%3f
=	%3d
&	%26

Please note, that some features may be not supported by all database drivers.

## Examples

**Example 1.** Connect to database through a socket

```
mysql://user@unix(/path/to/socket)/pear
```

*Listing  
3-4*

**Example 2.** Connect to database on a non standard port

```
pgsql://user:pass@tcp(localhost:5555)/pear
```

*Listing  
3-5*



If you use, the ip address {127.0.0.1}, the port parameter is ignored (default: 3306).

**Example 3.** Connect to SQLite on a Unix machine using options

```
sqlite:///full/unix/path/to/file.db?mode=0666
```

*Listing  
3-6*

**Example 4.** Connect to SQLite on a Windows machine using options

```
sqlite:///c:/full/windows/path/to/file.db?mode=0666
```

*Listing  
3-7*

**Example 5.** Connect to MySQLi using SSL

```
mysqli://user:pass@localhost/pear?key=client-key.pem&cert=client-cert.pem
```

*Listing  
3-8*

## Opening New Connections

Opening a new database connection in Doctrine is very easy. If you wish to use PDO<sup>24</sup> you can just initialize a new PDO object.

Remember our `bootstrap.php` file we created in the Getting Started chapter? Under the code where we registered the Doctrine autoloader we are going to instantiate our new connection:

```
// bootstrap.php

// ...
$dsn = 'mysql:dbname=testdb;host=127.0.0.1';
$user = 'dbuser';
$password = 'dbpass';

$dbh = new PDO($dsn, $user, $password);
$conn = Doctrine_Manager::connection($dbh);
```

*Listing  
3-9*



Directly passing a PDO instance to `Doctrine_Manager::connection()` will not allow Doctrine to be aware of the username and password for the connection, since there is no way to retrieve it from an existing PDO instance. The username and password is required in order for Doctrine to be able to create and drop databases. To get around this you can manually set the username and password option directly on the `$conn` object.

24. <http://www.php.net/PDO>

Listing  
3-10

```
// bootstrap.php

// ...
$conn->setOption('username', $user);
$conn->setOption('password', $password);
```

## Lazy Database Connecting

Lazy-connecting to database can save a lot of resources. There might be many times where you don't need an actual database connection, hence its always recommended to use lazy-connecting (that means Doctrine will only connect to database when needed).

This feature can be very useful when using for example page caching, hence not actually needing a database connection on every request. Remember connecting to database is an expensive operation.

In the example below we will show you when you create a new Doctrine connection, the connection to the database isn't created until it is actually needed.

Listing  
3-11

```
// bootstrap.php

// ...

// At this point no actual connection to the database is created
$conn = Doctrine_Manager::connection('mysql://username:password@localhost/test');

// The first time the connection is needed, it is instantiated
// This query triggers the connection to be created
$conn->execute('SHOW TABLES');
```

## Testing your Connection

After reading the previous sections of this chapter, you should now know how to create a connection. So, lets modify our bootstrap file to include the initialization of a connection. For this example we will just be using a sqlite memory database but you can use whatever type of database connection you prefer.

Add your database connection to `bootstrap.php` and it should look something like the following:

Listing  
3-12

```
/**
 * Bootstrap Doctrine.php, register autoloader and specify
 * configuration attributes
 */

require_once('../doctrine/branches/1.0/lib/Doctrine.php');
spl_autoload_register25(array('Doctrine', 'autoload'));
```

---

25. [http://www.php.net/function.spl\\_autoload\\_register](http://www.php.net/function.spl_autoload_register)

```
$manager = Doctrine_Manager::getInstance();

$conn = Doctrine_Manager::connection('sqlite::memory:', 'doctrine');
```

To test the connection lets modify our `test.php` script and perform a small test. Since we create a variable name `$conn`, that variable is available to the test script so lets setup a small test to make sure our connection is working:

First lets create a test table and insert a record:

*Listing  
3-13*

```
// test.php

// ...
$conn->export->createTable('test', array('name' => array('type' => 'string')));
$conn->execute('INSERT INTO test (name) VALUES (?)', array('jwage'));
```

Now lets execute a simple `SELECT` query from the `test` table we just created to make sure the data was inserted and that we can retrieve it:

*Listing  
3-14*

```
// test.php

// ...
$stmt = $conn->prepare('SELECT * FROM test');
$stmt->execute();
$results = $stmt->fetchAll();
print_r26($results);
```

Execute `test.php` from your terminal and you should see:

*Listing  
3-15*

```
$ php test.php
Array
(
    [0] => Array
        (
            [name] => jwage
            [0] => jwage
        )
)
```

## Conclusion

Great! Now we learned some basic operations of Doctrine connections. We have modified our Doctrine test environment to have a new connection. This is required because the examples in the coming chapters will require a connection.

---

26. [http://www.php.net/function.print\\_r](http://www.php.net/function.print_r)

Lets move on to the Configuration chapter and learn how you can control functionality and configurations using the Doctrine attribute system.

## Chapter 4

# Configuration

Doctrine controls configuration of features and functionality using attributes. In this section we will discuss how to set and get attributes as well as an overview of what attributes exist for you to use to control Doctrine functionality.

## Levels of Configuration

Doctrine has a three-level configuration structure. You can set configuration attributes at a global, connection and table level. If the same attribute is set on both lower level and upper level, the uppermost attribute will always be used. So for example if a user first sets default fetchmode in global level to `Doctrine::FETCH_BATCH` and then sets a table fetchmode to `Doctrine::FETCH_LAZY`, the lazy fetching strategy will be used whenever the records of that table are being fetched.

- **Global level** - The attributes set in global level will affect every connection and every table in each connection.
- **Connection level** - The attributes set in connection level will take effect on each table in that connection.
- **Table level** - The attributes set in table level will take effect only on that table.

In the following example we set an attribute at the global level:

```
// bootstrap.php

// ...
$manager->setAttribute(Doctrine::ATTR_VALIDATE, Doctrine::VALIDATE_ALL);
```

*Listing  
4-1*

In the next example above we override the global attribute on given connection:

```
// bootstrap.php

// ...
$conn->setAttribute(Doctrine::ATTR_VALIDATE, Doctrine::VALIDATE_NONE);
```

*Listing  
4-2*

In the last example we override once again the connection level attribute in the table level:

Listing  
4-3

```
// bootstrap.php

// ...
$table = Doctrine::getTable('User');

$table->setAttribute(Doctrine::ATTR_VALIDATE, Doctrine::VALIDATE_ALL);
```



We haven't introduced the above used `Doctrine::getTable()` method. You will learn more about the table objects used in Doctrine in the Table section of the next chapter.

## Portability

Each database management system (DBMS) has its own behaviors. For example, some databases capitalize field names in their output, some lowercase them, while others leave them alone. These quirks make it difficult to port your applications over to another database type. Doctrine strives to overcome these differences so your applications can switch between DBMS's without any changes. For example switching from `sqlite` to `mysql`.

The portability modes are bitwised, so they can be combined using `|` and removed using `^`. See the examples section below on how to do this.



You can read more about the bitwise operators on the PHP website: <http://www.php.net/language.operators.bitwise><sup>27</sup>

## Portability Mode Attributes

Below is a list of all the available portability attributes and the description of what each one does:

Name	Description
PORTABILITY_ALL	Turn on all portability features. This is the default setting.
PORTABILITY_DELETE_COUNT	Force reporting the number of rows deleted. Some DBMS's don't count the number of rows deleted when performing simple <code>DELETE FROM tablename</code> queries. This mode tricks such DBMS's into telling the count by adding <code>WHERE 1=1</code> to the end of <code>DELETE</code> queries.
PORTABILITY_EMPTY_TO_NULL	Convert empty strings values to null in data in and output. Needed because Oracle considers empty strings to be null, while most other DBMS's know the difference between empty and null.
PORTABILITY_ERRORS	Makes certain error messages in certain drivers compatible with those from other DBMS's

27. <http://www.php.net/language.operators.bitwise>



PORTABILITY_FIX_ASSOC_FIELD_NAMES	This removes any qualifiers from keys in associative fetches. some RDBMS , like for example SQLite, will be default use the fully qualified name for a column in assoc fetches if it is qualified in a query.
PORTABILITY_FIX_CASE	Convert names of tables and fields to lower or upper case in all methods. The case depends on the field_case option that may be set to either CASE_LOWER (default) or CASE_UPPER
PORTABILITY_NONE	Turn off all portability features.
PORTABILITY_NUMROWS	Enable hack that makes numRows() work in Oracle.
PORTABILITY_EXPR	Makes DQL API throw exceptions when non-portable expressions are being used.
PORTABILITY_RTRIM	Right trim the data output for all data fetches. This does not applied in drivers for RDBMS that automatically right trim values of fixed length character values, even if they do not right trim value of variable length character values.

## Examples

Now we can use the `setAttribute()` method to enable portability for lowercasing and trimming with the following code:

```
// bootstrap.php

// ...
$conn->setAttribute('portability',
    Doctrine::PORTABILITY_FIX_CASE | Doctrine::PORTABILITY_RTRIM);
```

Listing  
4-4

Enable all portability options except trimming

```
// bootstrap.php

// ...
$conn->setAttribute('portability',
    Doctrine::PORTABILITY_ALL ^ Doctrine::PORTABILITY_RTRIM);
```

Listing  
4-5

## Identifier quoting

You can quote the db identifiers (table and field names) with `quoteIdentifier()`. The delimiting style depends on which database driver is being used.



Just because you CAN use delimited identifiers, it doesn't mean you SHOULD use them. In general, they end up causing way more problems than they solve. Anyway, it may be necessary when you have a reserved word as a field name (in this case, we suggest you to change it, if you can).

Some of the internal Doctrine methods generate queries. Enabling the `quote_identifier` attribute of Doctrine you can tell Doctrine to quote the identifiers in these generated queries. For all user supplied queries this option is irrelevant.

Portability is broken by using the following characters inside delimited identifiers:

Name	Character	Driver
backtick	`	MySQL
double quote	"	Oracle
brackets	[ or ]	Access

Delimited identifiers are known to generally work correctly under the following drivers: Mssql, Mysql, Oracle, Pgsq, Sqlite and Firebird.

When using the `Doctrine::ATTR_QUOTE_IDENTIFIER` option, all of the field identifiers will be automatically quoted in the resulting SQL statements:

Listing  
4-6

```
// bootstrap.php

// ...
$conn->setAttribute(Doctrine::ATTR_QUOTE_IDENTIFIER, true);
```

Will result in a SQL statement that all the field names are quoted with the backtick `` operator (in MySQL).

Listing  
4-7

```
SELECT
*
FROM sometable
WHERE `id` = '123'
```

As opposed to:

Listing  
4-8

```
SELECT
*
FROM sometable
WHERE id = '123'
```

## Exporting

The export attribute is used for telling Doctrine what it should export when exporting classes to your database for creating your tables.

If you don't want to export anything when exporting you can use:

Listing  
4-9

```
// bootstrap.php
```

```
// ...  
$manager->setAttribute(Doctrine::ATTR_EXPORT, Doctrine::EXPORT_NONE);
```

For exporting tables only (but not constraints) you can use one of the following:

```
// bootstrap.php  
  
// ...  
$manager->setAttribute(Doctrine::ATTR_EXPORT, Doctrine::EXPORT_TABLES);
```

*Listing  
4-10*

You can also use the following syntax as it is the same as the above:

```
// bootstrap.php  
  
// ...  
$manager->setAttribute(Doctrine::ATTR_EXPORT,  
    Doctrine::EXPORT_ALL ^ Doctrine::EXPORT_CONSTRAINTS);
```

*Listing  
4-11*

For exporting everything (tables and constraints) you can use:

```
// bootstrap.php  
  
// ...  
$manager->setAttribute(Doctrine::ATTR_EXPORT, Doctrine::EXPORT_ALL);
```

*Listing  
4-12*

## Naming convention attributes

Naming convention attributes affect the naming of different database related elements such as tables, indexes and sequences. Basically every naming convention attribute has an effect in both ways. When importing schemas from the database to classes and when exporting classes into database tables.

So for example by default Doctrine naming convention for indexes is `%s_idx`. Not only do the indexes you set get a special suffix, also the imported classes get their indexes mapped to their non-suffixed equivalents. This applies to all naming convention attributes.

### Index name format

`Doctrine::ATTR_IDXNAME_FORMAT` can be used for changing the naming convention of indexes. By default Doctrine uses the format `[name]_idx`. So defining an index called 'ageindex' will actually be converted into 'ageindex\_idx'.

You can change the index naming convention with the following code:

```
// bootstrap.php
```

*Listing  
4-13*

```
// ...
$manager->setAttribute(Doctrine::ATTR_IDXNAME_FORMAT, '%s_index');
```

## Sequence name format

Similar to `Doctrine::ATTR_IDXNAME_FORMAT`, `Doctrine::ATTR_SEQNAME_FORMAT` can be used for changing the naming convention of sequences. By default Doctrine uses the format `[name]_seq`, hence creating a new sequence with the name of `mysequence` will lead into creation of sequence called `mysequence_seq`.

You can change the sequence naming convention with the following code:

*Listing  
4-14*

```
// bootstrap.php

// ...
$manager->setAttribute(Doctrine::ATTR_IDXNAME_FORMAT, '%s_sequence');
```

## Table name format

The table name format can be changed the same as the index and sequence name format with the following code:

*Listing  
4-15*

```
// bootstrap.php

// ...
$manager->setAttribute(Doctrine::ATTR_TBLNAME_FORMAT, '%s_table');
```

## Database name format

The database name format can be changed the same as the index, sequence and table name format with the following code:

*Listing  
4-16*

```
// bootstrap.php

// ...
$manager->setAttribute(Doctrine::ATTR_DBNAME_FORMAT, 'myframework_%s');
```

## Validation attributes

Doctrine provides complete control over what it validates. The validation procedure can be controlled with `Doctrine::ATTR_VALIDATE`.

The validation modes are bitwised, so they can be combined using `|` and removed using `^`. See the examples section below on how to do this.

## Validation mode constants

Name	Description
VALIDATE_NONE	Turns off the whole validation procedure.
VALIDATE_LENGTHS	Makes Doctrine validate all field lengths.
VALIDATE_TYPES	Makes Doctrine validate all field types. Doctrine does loose type validation. This means that for example string with value '13.3' will not pass as an integer but '13' will.
VALIDATE_CONSTRAINTS	Makes Doctrine validate all field constraints such as notnull, email etc.
VALIDATE_ALL	Turns on all validations.



Validation by default is turned off so if you wish for your data to be validated you will need to enable it. Some examples of how to change this configuration are provided below.

## Examples

You can turn on all validations by using the `Doctrine::VALIDATE_ALL` attribute with the following code:

```
// bootstrap.php

// ...
$manager->setAttribute(Doctrine::ATTR_VALIDATE, Doctrine::VALIDATE_ALL);
```

Listing  
4-17

You can also configure Doctrine to validate lengths and types, but not constraints with the following code:

```
// bootstrap.php

// ...
$manager->setAttribute(Doctrine::ATTR_VALIDATE,
    Doctrine::VALIDATE_LENGTHS | Doctrine::VALIDATE_TYPES);
```

Listing  
4-18

## Optional String Syntax

You can optionally specify attribute names and values as strings. Below is an example. This is allowed as a convenience to shorten the syntax and make it easier to type.

```
// bootstrap.php

// ...
$conn->setAttribute('validate', 'none');
```

Listing  
4-19



Internally when strings are used they are converted to the constants and used.

---

## Conclusion

Now we have gone over some of the most common attributes used to configure Doctrine. Some of these attributes may not apply to you ever or you may not understand what you could use them for now. As you read the next chapters you will see which attributes you do and don't need to use and things will begin to make more sense.

If you saw some attributes you wanted to change the value above, then you should have added it to your `bootstrap.php` file and it should look something like the following now:

Listing  
4-20

```
/**
 * Bootstrap Doctrine.php, register autoloader and specify
 * configuration attributes
 */

require_once('../doctrine/branches/1.0/lib/Doctrine.php');
spl_autoload_register28(array('Doctrine', 'autoload'));
$manager = Doctrine_Manager::getInstance();

$conn = Doctrine_Manager::connection('sqlite::memory:', 'doctrine');

$manager->setAttribute(Doctrine::ATTR_VALIDATE, Doctrine::VALIDATE_ALL);
$manager->setAttribute(Doctrine::ATTR_EXPORT, Doctrine::EXPORT_ALL);
$manager->setAttribute(Doctrine::ATTR_MODEL_LOADING,
Doctrine::MODEL_LOADING_CONSERVATIVE);
```

Now we are ready to move on to the next chapter where we will learn everything there is to know about Doctrine Connections.

---

28. [http://www.php.net/function.spl\\_autoload\\_register](http://www.php.net/function.spl_autoload_register)

## Chapter 5

# Connections

## Introduction

From the start Doctrine has been designed to work with multiple connections. Unless separately specified Doctrine always uses the current connection for executing the queries.

In this chapter we will demonstrate how to create and work with Doctrine connections.

## Opening Connections

`Doctrine_Manager` provides the static method `Doctrine_Manager::connection()` which opens new connections.

In this example we will show you to open a new connection:

```
// test.php

// ...
$conn = Doctrine_Manager::connection('mysql://username:password@localhost/test',
'connection 1');
```

*Listing  
5-1*

## Retrieve Connections

If you use the `Doctrine_Manager::connection()` method and don't pass any arguments it will return the current connection:

```
// test.php

// ...
$conn2 = Doctrine_Manager::connection();

if ($conn === $conn2) {
    echo 'Doctrine_Manager::connection() returns the current connection';
}
```

*Listing  
5-2*

## Current Connection

The current connection is the last opened connection. In the next example we will show how you can get the current connection from the `Doctrine_Manager` instance:

Listing  
5-3

```
// test.php

// ...
$conn2 = Doctrine_Manager::connection('mysql://username2:password2@localhost/
test2', 'connection 2');

if ($conn2 === $manager->getCurrentConnection()) {
    echo 'Current connection is the connection we just created!';
}
```

## Change Current Connection

You can change the current connection by calling `Doctrine_Manager::setCurrentConnection()`.

Listing  
5-4

```
// test.php

// ...
$manager->setCurrentConnection('connection 1');

echo $manager->getCurrentConnection()->getName(); // connection 1
```

## Iterating Connections

You can iterate over the opened connection by simply passing the manager object to a `foreach` clause. This is possible since `Doctrine_Manager` implements special `IteratorAggregate` interface.

Listing  
5-5

```
// test.php

// ...
foreach($manager as $conn) {
    echo $conn->getName() . "\n";
}
```

## Get Connection Name

You can easily get the name of a `Doctrine_Connection` instance with the following code:



*Listing  
5-6*

```
// test.php

// ...
$conn = Doctrine_Manager::connection();

$name = $manager->getConnectionName($conn);

echo $name; // connection 1
```

## Close Connection

You can easily close a connection and remove it from the Doctrine connection registry with the following code:

*Listing  
5-7*

```
// test.php

// ...
$conn = Doctrine_Manager::connection();

$manager->closeConnection($conn);
```

If you wish to close the connection but not remove it from the Doctrine connection registry you can use the following code instead:

*Listing  
5-8*

```
// test.php

// ...
$conn = Doctrine_Manager::connection();
$conn->close();
```

## Get All Connections

You can retrieve an array of all the registered connections by using the `Doctrine_Manager::getConnections()` method like below:

*Listing  
5-9*

```
// test.php

// ...
$conns = $manager->getConnections();
foreach ($conns as $conn) {
    echo $conn->getName() . "\n";
}
```

The above is essentially the same as iterating over the `Doctrine_Manager` object like we did earlier. Here it is again:

Listing  
5-10

```
// test.php

// ...
foreach ($manager as $conn) {
    echo $conn->getName() . "\n";
}
```

## Count Connections

You can easily get the number of connections from a `Doctrine_Manager` object since it implements the `Countable` interface.

Listing  
5-11

```
// test.php

// ...
$num = count29($manager);

echo $num;
```

The above is the same as doing:

Listing  
5-12

```
// test.php

// ...
$num = $manager->count30();
```

## Creating and Dropping Database

When you create connections using Doctrine, you gain the ability to easily create and drop the databases related to those connections.

This is as simple as using some functions provided in the `Doctrine_Manager` or `Doctrine_Connection` classes.

The following code will iterate over all instantiated connections and call the `dropDatabases()`/`createDatabases()` function on each one:

Listing  
5-13

```
// test.php

// ...
```

---

29. <http://www.php.net/function.count>

30. <http://www.php.net/function.count>

```
$manager->createDatabases();  
  
$manager->dropDatabases();
```

### Drop/create database for specific connection

You can easily drop or create the database for a specific `Doctrine_Connection` instance by calling the `dropDatabase()/createDatabase()` function on the connection instance with the following code:

```
// test.php  
  
// ...  
$conn->createDatabase();  
  
$conn->dropDatabase();
```

*Listing  
5-14*

## Conclusion

Now that we have learned all about Doctrine connections we should be ready to dive right in to models in the Introduction to Models chapter. We will learn a little bit about Doctrine models first. Then we will start to have some fun and create our first test models and see what kind of magic Doctrine can provide for you.

## Chapter 6

# Introduction to Models

## Introduction

At the lowest level, Doctrine represents your database schema with a set of PHP classes. These classes define the schema and behavior of your model.

A basic model that represents a user in a web application might look something like this.

*Listing  
6-1*

```
class User extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('username', 'string', 255);
        $this->hasColumn('password', 'string', 255);
    }

    public function setUp()
    {
        $this->actAs('Timestampable');
    }
}
```



We aren't actually going to use the above class definition, it is only meant to be an example. We will generate our first class definition from an existing database table later in this chapter.

Each `Doctrine_Record` child class can have a `setTableDefinition()` and `setUp()` method. The `setTableDefinition()` method is for defining columns, indexes and other information about the schema of tables. The `setUp()` method is for attaching behaviors and defining relationships between `Doctrine_Record` child classes. In the above example we are enabling the `Timestampable` behavior which adds some automagic functionality. You will learn more about what all can be used in these functions in the *Defining Models* chapter.

## Generating Models

Doctrine offers ways to generate these classes to make it easier to get started using Doctrine.



Generating from existing databases is only meant to be a convenience for getting started. After you generate from the database you will have to tweak it and clean things up as needed.

## Existing Databases

A common case when looking for ORM tools like Doctrine is that the database and the code that access it is growing large/complex. A more substantial tool is needed than manual SQL code.

Doctrine has support for generating `Doctrine_Record` classes from your existing database. There is no need for you to manually write all the `Doctrine_Record` classes for your domain model.

### Making the first import

Let's consider we have a mysql database called `doctrine_test` with a single table named `user`. The `user` table has been created with the following sql statement:

```
CREATE TABLE user (
    id bigint(20) NOT NULL auto_increment,
    first_name varchar(255) default NULL,
    last_name varchar(255) default NULL,
    username varchar(255) default NULL,
    password varchar(255) default NULL,
    type varchar(255) default NULL,
    is_active tinyint(1) default '1',
    is_super_admin tinyint(1) default '0',
    created_at TIMESTAMP,
    updated_at TIMESTAMP,
    PRIMARY KEY (id)
) ENGINE=InnoDB
```

*Listing  
6-2*

Now we would like to convert it into `Doctrine_Record` class. With Doctrine this is easy! Remember our test script we created in the Getting Started chapter? We're going to use that generate our models.

First we need to modify our `bootstrap.php` to use the MySQL database instead of sqlite memory:

```
// bootstrap.php

// ...
$conn = Doctrine_Manager::connection('mysql://root:m3cr3t@localhost/
doctrine_test', 'doctrine');
// ...
```

*Listing  
6-3*



You can use the `$conn->createDatabase()` method to create the database if it does not already exist and the connected user has permission to create databases. Then use the above provided CREATE TABLE statement to create the table.

Now we need a place to store our generated classes so let's create a directory named `models` in the `doctrine_test` directory:

Listing 6-4 `$ mkdir doctrine_test/models`

Now we just need to add the code to our `test.php` script to generate the model classes:

Listing 6-5

```
// test.php

// ...
Doctrine::generateModelsFromDb('models', array('doctrine'),
array('generateTableClasses' => true));
```



The `generateModelsFromDb` method only requires one parameter and it is the import directory (the directory where the generated record files will be written to). The second argument is an array of database connection names to generate models for, and the third is the array of options to use for the model building.

That's it! Now there should be a file called `BaseUser.php` in your `doctrine_test/models/generated` directory. The file should look like the following:

Listing 6-6

```
// models/generated/BaseUser.php

/**
 * This class has been auto-generated by the Doctrine ORM Framework
 */
abstract class BaseUser extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->setTableName('user');
        $this->hasColumn('id', 'integer', 8, array('type' => 'integer', 'length' => 8,
'primary' => true, 'autoincrement' => true));
        $this->hasColumn('first_name', 'string', 255, array('type' => 'string',
'length' => 255));
        $this->hasColumn('last_name', 'string', 255, array('type' => 'string',
'length' => 255));
        $this->hasColumn('username', 'string', 255, array('type' => 'string', 'length'
=> 255));
        $this->hasColumn('password', 'string', 255, array('type' => 'string', 'length'
=> 255));
        $this->hasColumn('type', 'string', 255, array('type' => 'string', 'length' =>
255));
        $this->hasColumn('is_active', 'integer', 1, array('type' => 'integer',
'length' => 1, 'default' => '1'));
        $this->hasColumn('is_super_admin', 'integer', 1, array('type' => 'integer',
'length' => 1, 'default' => '0'));
        $this->hasColumn('created_at', 'timestamp', null, array('type' => 'timestamp',
'notnull' => true));
        $this->hasColumn('updated_at', 'timestamp', null, array('type' => 'timestamp',
'notnull' => true));
    }
}
```

You should also have a file called `User.php` in your `doctrine_test/models` directory. The file should look like the following:

*Listing  
6-7*

```
// models/User.php

/**
 * This class has been auto-generated by the Doctrine ORM Framework
 */
class User extends BaseUser
{

}
```

Doctrine will automatically generate a skeleton `Doctrine_Table` class for the model at `doctrine_test/models/UserTable.php` because we passed the option `generateTableClasses` with a value of `true`. The file should look like the following:

*Listing  
6-8*

```
// models/UserTable.php

/**
 * This class has been auto-generated by the Doctrine ORM Framework
 */
class UserTable extends Doctrine_Table
{

}
```

You can place custom functions inside the `User` and `UserTable` classes to customize the functionality of your models. Below are some examples:

*Listing  
6-9*

```
// models/User.php

// ...
class User extends BaseUser
{
    public function setPassword($password)
    {
        return $this->_set('password', md531($password));
    }
}
```



In order for the above password accessor overriding to work properly you must enable the `auto_accessor_override` attribute in your `bootstrap.php` file like done below.

---

*Listing  
6-10*

---

31. <http://www.php.net/function.md5>

```
// bootstrap.php

// ...
$manager->setAttribute(Doctrine::ATTR_AUTO_ACCESSOR_OVERRIDE, true);
```

Now when you try and set a users password it will be md5 encrypted. First we need to modify our `bootstrap.php` file to include some code for autoloading our models from the `models` directory:

Listing  
6-11

```
// bootstrap.php

// ...
Doctrine::loadModels('models');
```



The model loading is fully explained later in the Autoloading Models section of this chapter.

---

Now we can modify `test.php` to include some code which will test the changes we made to the `File` model:

Listing  
6-12

```
// test.php

// ...

$user = new User();
$user->username = 'jwage';
$user->password = 'changeme';

echo $user->password; // outputs md5 hash and not changeme
```

Now when you execute `test.php` from your terminal you should see the following:

Listing  
6-13

```
$ php test.php
4cb9c8a8048fd02294477fcb1a41191a
```

Here is an example of some custom functions you might add to the `UserTable` class:

Listing  
6-14

```
// models/UserTable.php

// ...
class UserTable extends Doctrine_Table
{
    public function getCreatedToday()
    {
        $today = date32('Y-m-d h:i:s', strtotime33(date34('Y-m-d')));
```

---

32. <http://www.php.net/function.date>



```

        return $this->createQuery('u')
            ->where('u.created_at > ?', $today)
            ->execute();
    }
}

```



In order for custom `Doctrine_Table` classes to be loaded you must enable the `autoload_table_classes` attribute in your `bootstrap.php` file like done below.

```

// bootstrap.php

// ...
$manager->setAttribute(Doctrine::ATTR_AUTOLOAD_TABLE_CLASSES, true);

```

*Listing  
6-15*

Now you have access to this function when you are working with the `UserTable` instance:

```

// test.php

// ...
$usersCreatedToday = Doctrine::getTable('User')->getCreatedToday();

```

*Listing  
6-16*

## Schema Files

You can alternatively manage your models with YAML schema files and generate PHP classes from them. First lets generate a YAML schema file from the existing models we already have to make things easier. Change `test.php` to have the following code inside:

```

// test.php

// ...

Doctrine::generateYamlFromModels('schema.yml', 'models');

```

*Listing  
6-17*

Execute the `test.php` script:

```
$ php test.php
```

*Listing  
6-18*

Now you should see a file named `schema.yml` created in the root of the `doctrine_test` directory. It should look like the following:

```

User:
  tableName: user

```

*Listing  
6-19*

- 
- 33. <http://www.php.net/function.strtotime>
  - 34. <http://www.php.net/function.date>

```

columns:
  id:
    type: integer(8)
    primary: true
    autoincrement: true
  is_active:
    type: integer(1)
    default: '1'
  is_super_admin:
    type: integer(1)
    default: '0'
  created_at:
    type: timestamp(25)
    notnull: true
  updated_at:
    type: timestamp(25)
    notnull: true
  first_name: string(255)
  last_name: string(255)
  username: string(255)
  password: string(255)
  type: string(255)

```

So now that we have a valid YAML schema file, we can now maintain our schema from here and generate the PHP classes from here. Lets create a new php script called `generate.php`. This script will re-generate everything and make sure the database is reinstantiated each time the script is called:

Listing  
6-20

```

// generate.php

require_once('bootstrap.php');

Doctrine::dropDatabases();
Doctrine::createDatabases();
Doctrine::generateModelsFromYaml('schema.yml', 'models');
Doctrine::createTablesFromModels('models');

```

Now you can alter your `schema.yml` and re-generate your models by running the following command from your terminal:

Listing  
6-21

```
$ php generate.php
```

Now that we have our YAML schema file setup and we can re-generate our models from the schema files lets cleanup the file a little and take advantage of some of the power of Doctrine:

Listing  
6-22

```

User:
  actAs: [Timestampable]
  columns:
    is_active:
      type: integer(1)
      default: '1'
    is_super_admin:
      type: integer(1)
      default: '0'
    first_name: string(255)

```

```
last_name: string(255)
username: string(255)
password: string(255)
type: string(255)
```

**Notice some of the changes we made:**

- 1.) Removed the explicit `tableName` definition as it will default to user.
  - 2.) Attached the `Timestampable` behavior.
  - 3.) Removed `id` column as it is automatically added if no primary key is defined.
  - 4.) Removed `updated_at` and `created_at` columns as they can be handled automatically by the `Timestampable` behavior.
- Now look how much cleaner the YAML is and is because we take advantage of defaults and utilize core behaviors it is much less work we have to do ourselves.
- 

Now re-generate your models from the YAML schema file:

```
$ php generate.php
```

*Listing  
6-23*

You can learn more about YAML Schema Files in its dedicated chapter.

## Manually Writing Models

You can optionally skip all the convenience methods and write your models manually using nothing but your own PHP code. You can learn all about the models syntax in the Defining Models chapter.

## Autoloading Models

Doctrine offers two ways of loading models. We have conservative(lazy) loading, and aggressive loading. Conservative loading will not require the PHP file initially, instead it will cache the path to the class name and this path is then used in the `Doctrine::autoload()` we registered earlier with `spl_autoload_register()`. Below are some examples using the both types of model loading.

### Conservative

Conservative model loading is going to be the ideal model loading method for a production environment. This method will lazy load all of the models instead of loading them all when model loading is executed.

Conservative model loading requires that each file contain only one class, and the file must be named after the class. For example, if you have a class named `User`, it must be contained in a file named `User.php`.

To use conservative model loading we need to set the model loading attribute to be conservative:

```
$manager->setAttribute(Doctrine::ATTR_MODEL_LOADING,
Doctrine::MODEL_LOADING_CONSERVATIVE);
```

*Listing  
6-24*



We already made this change in an earlier step in the `bootstrap.php` file so you don't need to make this change again.

---

When we use the `Doctrine::loadModels()` functionality all found classes will be cached internally so the autoloader can require them later.

Listing  
6-25

```
Doctrine::loadModels('models');
```

Now when we instantiate a new class, for example a `File` class, the autoloader will be triggered and the class is required.

Listing  
6-26

```
// triggers call to Doctrine::autoload() and the class is included
$user = new User();
```

Instantiating the class above triggers a call to `Doctrine::autoload()` and the class that was found in the call to `Doctrine::loadModels()` will be required and made available.



Conservative model loading is recommended in most cases, specifically for production environments as you do not want to require every single model class even when it is not needed as this is unnecessary overhead. You only want to require it when it is needed.

---

## Aggressive

Aggressive model loading is the default model loading method and is very simple, it will look for all files with a `.php` extension and will include it. Doctrine can not satisfy any inheritance and if your models extend another model, it cannot include them in the correct order so it is up to you to make sure all dependencies are satisfied in each class.

With aggressive model loading you can have multiple classes per file and the file name is not required to be related to the name of the class inside of the file.

The downside of aggressive model loading is that every `php` file is included in every request, so if you have lots of models it is recommended you use conservative model loading.

To use aggressive model loading we need to set the model loading attribute to be aggressive:

Listing  
6-27

```
$manager->setAttribute(Doctrine::ATTR_MODEL_LOADING,
Doctrine::MODEL_LOADING_AGGRESSIVE);
```



Aggressive is the default of the model loading attribute so explicitly setting it is not necessary if you wish to use it.

---

When we use the `Doctrine::loadModels()` functionality all the classes found will be included right away:

Listing  
6-28

```
Doctrine::loadModels('/path/to/models');
```

## Conclusion

This chapter is probably the most intense chapter so far but it is a good one. We learned a little about how to use models, how to generate models from existing databases, how to write our own models, and how to maintain our models as YAML schema files. We also modified our Doctrine test environment to implement some functionality for loading models from our models directory.

This topic of Doctrine models is so large that it warranted the chapters being split in to three pieces to make it easier on the developer to absorb all the information. In the next chapter we will really get in to the API we use to define our models.

## Chapter 7

# Defining Models

As we mentioned before, at the lowest level in Doctrine your schema is represented by a set of php classes that map the schema meta data for your database tables.

In this chapter we will explain in detail how you can map your schema information using php code.

## Columns

One problem with database compatibility is that many databases differ in their behavior of how the result set of a query is returned. MySQL leaves the field names unchanged, which means if you issue a query of the form "SELECT myField FROM ..." then the result set will contain the field 'myField'.

Unfortunately, this is just the way MySQL and some other databases do it. Postgres for example returns all field names in lowercase whilst Oracle returns all field names in uppercase. "So what? In what way does this influence me when using Doctrine?", you may ask. Fortunately, you don't have to bother about that issue at all.

Doctrine takes care of this problem transparently. That means if you define a derived Record class and define a field called myField you will always access it through `$record->myField` (or `$record['myField']`, whatever you prefer) no matter whether you're using MySQL or Postgres or Oracle etc.

In short: You can name your fields however you want, using `under_scores`, `camelCase` or whatever you prefer.



In Doctrine columns and column aliases are case sensitive. So when you are using columns in your DQL queries, the column/field names must match the case in your model definition.

---

## Column aliases

Doctrine offers a way of setting column aliases. This can be very useful when you want to keep the application logic separate from the database logic. For example if you want to change the name of the database field all you need to change at your application is the column definition.

Listing  
7-1

```
// models/Book.php

class Book extends Doctrine_Record
{
```

```

    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('bookTitle as title', 'string');
    }
}

```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

```
# schema.yml
```

*Listing  
7-2*

```

# ...
Book:
  columns:
    bookTitle:
      name: bookTitle as title
      type: string

```

Now the column in the database is named bookTitle but you can access the property on your objects using title.

```
// test.php
```

*Listing  
7-3*

```

// ...
$book = new Book();
$book->title = 'Some book';
$book->save();

```

## Default values

Doctrine supports default values for all data types. When default value is attached to a record column this means two things. First this value is attached to every newly created Record and when Doctrine creates your database tables it includes the default value in the create table statement.

```
// models/generated/BaseUser.php
```

*Listing  
7-4*

```

class User extends BaseUser
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('username', 'string', 255, array('default' => 'default
username'));

        // ...
    }

    // ...
}

```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

*Listing 7-5* # schema.yml

```
# ...
User:
# ...
  columns:
    username:
      type: string(255)
      default: default username
# ...
```

Now when you print the name on a brand new User record it will print the default value:

*Listing 7-6*

```
// test.php

// ...
$user = new User();
echo $user->username; // default username
```

## Data types

### Introduction

All DBMS provide multiple choice of data types for the information that can be stored in their database table fields. However, the set of data types made available varies from DBMS to DBMS.

To simplify the interface with the DBMS supported by Doctrine, it was defined a base set of data types that applications may access independently of the underlying DBMS.

The Doctrine applications programming interface takes care of mapping data types when managing database options. It is also able to convert that is sent to and received from the underlying DBMS using the respective driver.

The following data type examples should be used with Doctrine's `createTable()` method. The example array at the end of the data types section may be used with `createTable()` to create a portable table on the DBMS of choice (please refer to the main Doctrine documentation to find out what DBMS back ends are properly supported). It should also be noted that the following examples do not cover the creation and maintenance of indices, this chapter is only concerned with data types and the proper usage thereof.

It should be noted that the length of the column affects in database level type as well as application level validated length (the length that is validated with Doctrine validators).

Example 1. Column named 'content' with type 'string' and length 3000 results in database type 'TEXT' of which has database level length of 4000. However when the record is validated it is only allowed to have 'content' -column with maximum length of 3000.

Example 2. Column with type 'integer' and length 1 results in 'TINYINT' on many databases.

In general Doctrine is smart enough to know which integer/string type to use depending on the specified length.



## Type modifiers

Within the Doctrine API there are a few modifiers that have been designed to aid in optimal table design. These are:

- The notnull modifiers
- The length modifiers
- The default modifiers
- unsigned modifiers for some field definitions, although not all DBMS's support this modifier for integer field types.
- zerofill modifiers (not supported by all drivers)
- collation modifiers (not supported by all drivers)
- fixed length modifiers for some field definitions.

Building upon the above, we can say that the modifiers alter the field definition to create more specific field types for specific usage scenarios. The notnull modifier will be used in the following way to set the default DBMS NOT NULL Flag on the field to true or false, depending on the DBMS's definition of the field value: In PostgreSQL the "NOT NULL" definition will be set to "NOT NULL", whilst in MySQL (for example) the "NULL" option will be set to "NO". In order to define a "NOT NULL" field type, we simply add an extra parameter to our definition array (See the examples in the following section)

*Listing  
7-7*

```
'sometime' = array(
    'type'      => 'time',
    'default'   => '12:34:05',
    'notnull'   => true,
),
```

Using the above example, we can also explore the default field operator. Default is set in the same way as the notnull operator to set a default value for the field. This value may be set in any character set that the DBMS supports for text fields, and any other valid data for the field's data type. In the above example, we have specified a valid time for the "Time" data type, '12:34:05'. Remember that when setting default dates and times, as well as datetimes, you should research and stay within the epoch of your chosen DBMS, otherwise you will encounter difficult to diagnose errors!

*Listing  
7-8*

```
'sometext' = array(
    'type'      => 'string',
    'length'    => 12,
),
```

The above example will create a character varying field of length 12 characters in the database table. If the length definition is left out, Doctrine will create a length of the maximum allowable length for the data type specified, which may create a problem with some field types and indexing. Best practice is to define lengths for all or most of your fields.

## Boolean

The boolean data type represents only two values that can be either 1 or 0. Do not assume that these data types are stored as integers because some DBMS drivers may implement this

type with single character text fields for a matter of efficiency. Ternary logic is possible by using null as the third possible value that may be assigned to fields of this type.



The next several examples are not meant for you to use and give them a try. They are simply for demonstrating purposes to show you how to use the different Doctrine data types using PHP code or YAML schema files.

---

Listing  
7-9

```
class Test extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('booltest', 'boolean');
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

Listing  
7-10

```
Test:
  columns:
    booltest: boolean
```

## Integer

The integer type is the same as integer type in PHP. It may store integer values as large as each DBMS may handle.

Fields of this type may be created optionally as unsigned integers but not all DBMS support it. Therefore, such option may be ignored. Truly portable applications should not rely on the availability of this option.

The integer type maps to different database type depending on the column length.

Listing  
7-11

```
class Test extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('integertest', 'integer', 4, array(
            'unsigned' => true
        ));
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

Listing  
7-12

```
Test:
  columns:
    integertest:
      type: integer(4)
      unsigned: true
```

## Float

The float data type may store floating point decimal numbers. This data type is suitable for representing numbers within a large scale range that do not require high accuracy. The scale and the precision limits of the values that may be stored in a database depends on the DBMS that it is used.

*Listing  
7-13*

```
class Test extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('floattest', 'float');
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

*Listing  
7-14*

```
Test:
  columns:
    floattest: float
```

## Decimal

The decimal data type may store fixed precision decimal numbers. This data type is suitable for representing numbers that require high precision and accuracy.

*Listing  
7-15*

```
class Test extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('decimaltest', 'decimal');
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

*Listing  
7-16*

```
Test:
  columns:
    decimaltest: decimal
```

You can specify the length of the decimal just like you would set the length of any other column and you can specify the scale as an option in the third argument:

*Listing  
7-17*

```
class Test extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('decimaltest', 'decimal', 18, array(
            'scale' => 2
        ));
    }
}
```

```

    )
  );
}
}

```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

*Listing 7-18*

```

Test:
  columns:
    decimaltest:
      type: decimal(18)
      scale: 2

```

## String

The text data type is available with two options for the length: one that is explicitly length limited and another of undefined length that should be as large as the database allows.

The length limited option is the most recommended for efficiency reasons. The undefined length option allows very large fields but may prevent the use of indexes, nullability and may not allow sorting on fields of its type.

The fields of this type should be able to handle 8 bit characters. Drivers take care of DBMS specific escaping of characters of special meaning with the values of the strings to be converted to this type.

By default Doctrine will use variable length character types. If fixed length types should be used can be controlled via the fixed modifier.

*Listing 7-19*

```

class Test extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('stringtest', 'string', 200, array(
            'fixed' => true
        ));
    }
}

```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

*Listing 7-20*

```

Test:
  columns:
    stringtest:
      type: string(200)
      fixed: true

```

## Array

This is the same as the 'array' type in PHP.

Listing  
7-21

```
class Test extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('arraytest', 'array', 10000);
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

```
Test:
  columns:
    arraytest: array(10000)
```

Listing  
7-22

## Object

Doctrine supports objects as column types. Basically you can set an object to a field and Doctrine handles automatically the serialization / unserialization of that object.

Listing  
7-23

```
class Test extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('objecttest', 'object');
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

```
Test:
  columns:
    objecttest: object
```

Listing  
7-24

The array and object types simply serialize the data when persisting to the database and unserialize the data when pulling from the database.

## Blob

Blob (Binary Large Object) data type is meant to store data of undefined length that may be too large to store in text fields, like data that is usually stored in files.

Blob fields are usually not meant to be used as parameters of query search clause (WHERE) unless the underlying DBMS supports a feature usually known as "full text search"

Listing  
7-25

```
class Test extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
```

```

        $this->hasColumn('blobtest', 'blob');
    }
}

```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

*Listing 7-26*

```

Test:
  columns:
    blobtest: blob

```

## Clob

Clob (Character Large Object) data type is meant to store data of undefined length that may be too large to store in text fields, like data that is usually stored in files.

Clob fields are meant to store only data made of printable ASCII characters whereas blob fields are meant to store all types of data.

Clob fields are usually not meant to be used as parameters of query search clause (WHERE) unless the underlying DBMS supports a feature usually known as "full text search"

*Listing 7-27*

```

class Test extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('clobtest', 'clob');
    }
}

```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

*Listing 7-28*

```

Test:
  columns:
    clobtest: clob

```

## Timestamp

The timestamp data type is a mere combination of the date and the time of the day data types. The representation of values of the time stamp type is accomplished by joining the date and time string values in a single string joined by a space. Therefore, the format template is YYYY-MM-DD HH:MI:SS. The represented values obey the same rules and ranges described for the date and time data types

*Listing 7-29*

```

class Test extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('timestamptest', 'timestamp');
    }
}

```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

```
Test:
  columns:
    timestamptest: timestamp
```

*Listing  
7-30*

## Time

The time data type may represent the time of a given moment of the day. DBMS independent representation of the time of the day is also accomplished by using text strings formatted according to the ISO-8601 standard.

The format defined by the ISO-8601 standard for the time of the day is HH:MI:SS where HH is the number of hour the day from 00 to 23 and MI and SS are respectively the number of the minute and of the second from 00 to 59. Hours, minutes and seconds numbered below 10 should be padded on the left with 0.

Some DBMS have native support for time of the day formats, but for others the DBMS driver may have to represent them as integers or text values. In any case, it is always possible to make comparisons between time values as well sort query results by fields of this type.

```
class Test extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('timetest', 'time');
    }
}
```

*Listing  
7-31*

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

```
Test:
  columns:
    timetest: time
```

*Listing  
7-32*

## Date

The date data type may represent dates with year, month and day. DBMS independent representation of dates is accomplished by using text strings formatted according to the ISO-8601 standard.

The format defined by the ISO-8601 standard for dates is YYYY-MM-DD where YYYY is the number of the year (Gregorian calendar), MM is the number of the month from 01 to 12 and DD is the number of the day from 01 to 31. Months or days numbered below 10 should be padded on the left with 0.

Some DBMS have native support for date formats, but for others the DBMS driver may have to represent them as integers or text values. In any case, it is always possible to make comparisons between date values as well sort query results by fields of this type.

```
class Test extends Doctrine_Record
```

*Listing  
7-33*

```
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('datetest', 'date');
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

*Listing 7-34* Test:  
 columns:  
 datetest: date

## Enum

Doctrine has a unified enum type. The possible values for the column can be specified can be specified on the column definition with `Doctrine_Record::hasColumn()`



If you wish to use native enum types for your dbms if it supports it then you must set the following attribute:

---

*Listing 7-35* \$conn->setAttribute(Doctrine::ATTR\_USE\_NATIVE\_ENUM, true);

Here is an example of how to specify the enum values:

*Listing 7-36*

```
class Test extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('enumtest', 'enum', null,
            array('values' => array('php', 'java', 'python'))
        );
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

*Listing 7-37* Test:  
 columns:  
 enumtest:  
 type: enum  
 values: [php, java, python]



## Gzip

Gzip datatype is the same as string except that its automatically compressed when persisted and uncompressed when fetched. This datatype can be useful when storing data with a large compressibility ratio, such as bitmap images.

*Listing  
7-38*

```
class Test extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('gziptest', 'gzip');
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the YAML Schema Files chapter:

*Listing  
7-39*

```
Test:
  columns:
    gziptest: gzip
```



The family of php functions for compressing<sup>35</sup> are used internally for compressing and uncompressing the contents of the gzip column type.

---

## Examples

Consider the following definition:

*Listing  
7-40*

```
class Example extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('id', 'string', 32, array(
            'type' => 'string',
            'fixed' => 1,
            'primary' => true,
            'length' => '32'
        ))
    );

    $this->hasColumn('someint', 'integer', 10, array(
        'type' => 'integer',
        'unsigned' => true,
        'length' => '10'
    ))
    );

    $this->hasColumn('sometime', 'time', 25, array(
        'type' => 'time',
        'default' => '12:34:05',
    ))
    );
}
```

---

35. <http://www.php.net/gzcompress>

```
        'notnull' => true,
        'length' => '25'
    )
);

$this->hasColumn('sometext', 'string', 12, array(
    'type' => 'string',
    'length' => '12'
))

$this->hasColumn('somedate', 'date', 25, array(
    'type' => 'date',
    'length' => '25'
))

$this->hasColumn('sometimestamp', 'timestamp', 25, array(
    'type' => 'timestamp',
    'length' => '25'
))

$this->hasColumn('someboolean', 'boolean', 25, array(
    'type' => 'boolean',
    'length' => '25'
))

$this->hasColumn('somedecimal', 'decimal', 18, array(
    'type' => 'decimal',
    'length' => '18'
))

$this->hasColumn('somefloat', 'float', 2147483647, array(
    'type' => 'float',
    'length' => '2147483647'
))

$this->hasColumn('someclob', 'clob', 2147483647, array(
    'type' => 'clob',
    'length' => '2147483647'
))

$this->hasColumn('someblob', 'blob', 2147483647, array(
    'type' => 'blob',
    'length' => '2147483647'
))
}
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

Example:

```
tableName: example
columns:
  id:
    type: string(32)
    fixed: true
    primary: true
  someint:
    type: integer(10)
    unsigned: true
  sometime:
    type: time(25)
    default: '12'
    notnull: true
  sometext: string(12)
  somedate: date(25)
  sometimestamp: timestamp(25)
  someboolean: boolean(25)
  somedecimal: decimal(18)
  somefloat: float(2147483647)
  someclob: clob(2147483647)
  someblob: blob(2147483647)
```

Listing  
7-41

The above example will create the following database table in Pgsq:

Column	Type	Not Null	Default	comment
id	character(32)			
somename	character	varying(12)		
somedate	date			
sometimestamp	timestamp without time zone			
someboolean	boolean			
somedecimal	numeric(18,2)			
somefloat	double precision			
sometime	time without time zone	NOT NULL	'12:34:05'	
someclob	text			
someblob	bytea			

The schema schema will create the following database table in Mysql:

Field	Type	Collation	Attributes	Null	Default	comment
id	char(32)			YES		
somename	varchar(12)	latin1_swedish_ci		YES		
somedate	date			YES		
sometimestamp	timestamp without time zone			YES		
someboolean	tinyint(1)			YES		

somedecimal	decimal(18,2)		YES
somefloat	double		YES
sometime	time		NO 12:34:05
someclob	longtext	latin1_swedish_ci	YES
someblob	longblob	binary	YES

## Relationships

### Introduction

In Doctrine all record relations are being set with `Doctrine_Record::hasMany`, `Doctrine_Record::hasOne` methods. Doctrine supports almost all kinds of database relations from simple one-to-one foreign key relations to join table self-referencing relations.

Unlike the column definitions the `Doctrine_Record::hasMany` and `Doctrine_Record::hasOne` methods are placed within a method called `setUp()`. Both methods take two arguments: the first argument is a string containing the name of the class and optional alias, the second argument is an array consisting of relation options. The option array contains the following keys:

Name	Optional	Description
local	No	The local field of the relation. Local field is the linked field in the defining class.
foreign	No	The foreign field of the relation. Foreign field is the linked field in the linked class.
refClass	Yes	The name of the association class. This is only needed for many-to-many associations.
owningSide	Yes	Set to boolean true to indicate the owning side of the relation. The owning side is the side that owns the foreign key. There can only be one owning side in an association between two classes. Note that this option is required if Doctrine can't guess the owning side or it's guess is wrong. An example where this is the case is when both 'local' and 'foreign' are part of the identifier (primary key). It never hurts to specify the owning side in this way.
onDelete	Yes	The onDelete integrity action that is applied on the foreign key constraint when the tables are created by Doctrine.
onUpdate	Yes	The onUpdate integrity action that is applied on the foreign key constraint when the tables are created by Doctrine.
cascade	Yes	Specify application level cascading operations. Currently only delete is supported

So lets take our first example, say we have two classes `Forum_Board` and `Forum_Thread`. Here `Forum_Board` has many `Forum_Threads`, hence their relation is one-to-many. We don't want to write `Forum_` when accessing relations, so we use relation aliases and use the alias `Threads`.

First lets take a look at the `Forum_Board` class. It has three columns: name, description and since we didn't specify any primary key, Doctrine auto-creates an id column for it.

We define the relation to the `Forum_Thread` class by using the `hasMany()` method. Here the local field is the primary key of the board class whereas the foreign field is the `board_id` field of the `Forum_Thread` class.

Listing  
7-42

```
// models/Forum_Board.php

class Forum_Board extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('name', 'string', 100);
        $this->hasColumn('description', 'string', 5000);
    }

    public function setUp()
    {
        $this->hasMany('Forum_Thread as Threads', array(
            'local' => 'id',
            'foreign' => 'board_id'
        ));
    }
}
```



Notice the `as` keyword being used above. This means that the `Forum_Board` has a many relationship defined to `Forum_Thread` but is aliased as `Threads`.

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

Listing  
7-43

```
# schema.yml

# ...
Forum_Board:
  columns:
    name: string(100)
    description: string(5000)
```

Then let's have a peek at the `Forum_Thread` class. The columns here are irrelevant, but pay attention to how we define the relation. Since each Thread can have only one Board we are using the `hasOne()` method. Also notice how we once again use aliases and how the local column here is `board_id` while the foreign column is the `id` column.

Listing  
7-44

```
// models/Forum_Thread.php

class Forum_Thread extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('user_id', 'integer');
        $this->hasColumn('board_id', 'integer');
        $this->hasColumn('title', 'string', 200);
    }
}
```

```

        $this->hasColumn('updated', 'integer', 10);
        $this->hasColumn('closed', 'integer', 1);
    }

    public function setUp()
    {
        $this->hasOne('Forum_Board as Board', array(
            'local' => 'board_id',
            'foreign' => 'id'
        ));
    }
}

```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

*Listing 7-45* # schema.yml

```

# ...
Forum_Thread:
  columns:
    user_id: integer
    board_id: integer
    title: string(200)
    updated: integer(10)
    closed: integer(1)
  relations:
    User:
      local: user_id
      foreign: id
      foreignAlias: Threads
    Board:
      class: Forum_Board
      local: board_id
      foreign: id
      foreignAlias: Threads

```

Now we can start using these classes. The same accessors that you've already used for properties are all available for relations.

First lets create a new board:

*Listing 7-46* // test.php

```

// ...
$board = new Forum_Board();
$board->name = 'Some board';

```

Now lets create a new thread under the board:

*Listing 7-47* // test.php

```
// ...
$board->Threads[0]->title = 'new thread 1';
$board->Threads[1]->title = 'new thread 2';
```

Each Thread needs to be associated to a user so lets create a new User and associate it to each Thread:

*Listing  
7-48*

```
$user = new User();
$user->username = 'jwage';
$board->Threads[0]->User = $user;
$board->Threads[1]->User = $user;
```

Now we can save all the changes with one call. It will save the new board as well as its threads:

*Listing  
7-49*

```
// test.php

// ...
$board->save();
```

Lets do a little inspecting and see the data structure that is created when you use the code from above. Add some code to `test.php` to output an array of the object graph we've just populated:

*Listing  
7-50*

```
print_r($board->toArray(true));
```



The `Doctrine_Record::toArray()` takes all the data of a `Doctrine_Record` instance and converts it to an array so you can easily inspect the data of a record. It accepts an argument named `$deep` telling it whether or not to include relationships. In this example we have specified `{true}` because we want to include the Threads data.

---

Now when you execute `test.php` with PHP from your terminal you should see the following:

```
$ php test.php
Array
(
    [id] => 2
    [name] => Some board
    [description] =>
    [Threads] => Array
        (
            [0] => Array
                (
                    [id] => 3
                    [user_id] => 1
```

*Listing  
7-51*

```

        [board_id] => 2
        [title] => new thread 1
        [updated] =>
        [closed] =>
        [User] => Array
            (
                [id] => 1
                [is_active] => 1
                [is_super_admin] => 0
                [first_name] =>
                [last_name] =>
                [username] => jwage
                [password] =>
                [type] =>
                [created_at] => 2009-01-20 16:41:57
                [updated_at] => 2009-01-20 16:41:57
            )
        )
    )
[1] => Array
    (
        [id] => 4
        [user_id] => 1
        [board_id] => 2
        [title] => new thread 2
        [updated] =>
        [closed] =>
        [User] => Array
            (
                [id] => 1
                [is_active] => 1
                [is_super_admin] => 0
                [first_name] =>
                [last_name] =>
                [username] => jwage
                [password] =>
                [type] =>
                [created_at] => 2009-01-20 16:41:57
                [updated_at] => 2009-01-20 16:41:57
            )
        )
    )
)

```



Notice how the auto increment primary key and foreign keys are automatically set by Doctrine internally. You don't have to worry about the setting of primary keys and foreign keys at all!

---



## Foreign Key Associations

### One to One

One-to-one relations are probably the most basic relations. In the following example we have two classes, User and Email with their relation being one-to-one.

First lets take a look at the Email class. Since we are binding a one-to-one relationship we are using the `hasOne()` method. Notice how we define the foreign key column (`user_id`) in the Email class. This is due to a fact that Email is owned by the User class and not the other way around. In fact you should always follow this convention - always place the foreign key in the owned class.

The recommended naming convention for foreign key columns is: `[tableName]_[primaryKey]`. As here the foreign table is 'user' and its primary key is 'id' we have named the foreign key column as 'user\_id'.

*Listing  
7-52*

```
// models/Email.php

class Email extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('user_id', 'integer');
        $this->hasColumn('address', 'string', 150);
    }

    public function setUp()
    {
        $this->hasOne('User', array(
            'local' => 'user_id',
            'foreign' => 'id'
        ));
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

*Listing  
7-53*

```
# schema.yml

# ...
Email:
  columns:
    user_id: integer
    address: string(150)
  relations:
    User:
      local: user_id
      foreign: id
```



When using YAML schema files it is not required to specify the relationship on the opposite end(`User`) because the relationship is automatically flipped and added for you. The

---

relationship will be named the name of the class. So in this case the relationship on the `User` side will be called `Email` and will be many. If you wish to customize this you can use the `foreignAlias` and `foreignType` options.

---

The `Email` class is very similar to the `User` class. Notice how the local and foreign columns are switched in the `hasOne()` definition compared to the definition of the `Email` class.

Listing  
7-54

```
// models/User.php

class User extends BaseUser
{
    public function setUp()
    {
        parent::setUp();

        $this->hasOne('Email', array(
            'local' => 'id',
            'foreign' => 'user_id'
        ));
    }
}
```



Notice how we override the `setUp()` method and call `parent::setUp()`. This is because the `BaseUser` class which is generated from YAML or from an existing database contains the main `setUp()` method and we override it in the `User` class to add an additional relationship.

---

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

Listing  
7-55

```
# schema.yml

# ...
User:
# ...
  relations:
    # ...
    Email:
      local: id
      foreign: user_id
```

## One to Many and Many to One

One-to-Many and Many-to-One relations are very similar to One-to-One relations. The recommended conventions you came in terms with in the previous chapter also apply to one-to-many and many-to-one relations.

In the following example we have two classes: `User` and `Phonenumber`. We define their relation as one-to-many (a user can have many phonenumber). Here once again the `Phonenumber` is clearly owned by the `User` so we place the foreign key in the `Phonenumber` class.

Listing  
7-56

```
// models/User.php

class User extends BaseUser
{
    public function setUp()
    {
        parent::setUp();

        // ...

        $this->hasMany('Phonenumber as Phonenumbers', array(
            'local' => 'id',
            'foreign' => 'user_id'
        ));
    }
}

// models/Phonenumber.php

class Phonenumber extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('user_id', 'integer');
        $this->hasColumn('phonenumber', 'string', 50);
    }

    public function setUp()
    {
        $this->hasOne('User', array(
            'local' => 'user_id',
            'foreign' => 'id'
        ));
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

```
# schema.yml

# ...
User:
# ...
  relations:
    # ...
    Phonenumbers:
      type: many
      class: Phonenumber
      local: id
      foreign: user_id

Phonenumber:
```

Listing  
7-57

```

columns:
  user_id: integer
  phonenumber: string(50)
relations:
  User:
    local: user_id
    foreign: id

```

## Tree Structure

A tree structure is a self-referencing foreign key relation. The following definition is also called Adjacency List implementation in terms of hierarchical data concepts.

Listing  
7-58

```

// models/Task.php

class Task extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('name', 'string', 100);
        $this->hasColumn('parent_id', 'integer');
    }

    public function setUp()
    {
        $this->hasOne('Task as Parent', array(
            'local' => 'parent_id',
            'foreign' => 'id'
        ));

        $this->hasMany('Task as Subtasks', array(
            'local' => 'id',
            'foreign' => 'parent_id'
        ));
    }
}

```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

Listing  
7-59

```

# schema.yml

# ...
Task:
  columns:
    name: string(100)
    parent_id: integer
  relations:
    Parent:
      class: Task
      local: parent_id
      foreign: id
      foreignAlias: Subtasks

```



The above implementation is purely an example and is not the most efficient way to store and retrieve hierarchical data. Check the `NestedSet` behavior included in Doctrine for the recommended way to deal with hierarchical data.

## Join Table Associations

### Many to Many

If you are coming from relational database background it may be familiar to you how many-to-many associations are handled: an additional association table is needed.

In many-to-many relations the relation between the two components is always an aggregate relation and the association table is owned by both ends. For example in the case of users and groups: when a user is being deleted, the groups he/she belongs to are not being deleted. However, the associations between this user and the groups he/she belongs to are instead being deleted. This removes the relation between the user and the groups he/she belonged to, but does not remove the user nor the groups.

Sometimes you may not want that association table rows are being deleted when user / group is being deleted. You can override this behavior by setting the relations to association component (in this case `Groupuser`) explicitly.

In the following example we have Groups and Users of which relation is defined as many-to-many. In this case we also need to define an additional class called `Groupuser`.

*Listing  
7-60*

```
class User extends BaseUser
{
    public function setUp()
    {
        parent::setUp();

        // ...

        $this->hasMany('Group as Groups', array(
            'local' => 'user_id',
            'foreign' => 'group_id',
            'refClass' => 'UserGroup'
        ));
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

*Listing  
7-61*

```
User:
# ...
relations:
# ...
Groups:
  class: Group
  local: user_id
  foreign: group_id
  refClass: UserGroup
```



The above `refClass` option is required when setting up many-to-many relationships.

Listing  
7-62

```
// models/Group.php

class Group extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->setTableName('groups');
        $this->hasColumn('name', 'string', 30);
    }

    public function setUp()
    {
        $this->hasMany('User as Users', array(
            'local' => 'group_id',
            'foreign' => 'user_id',
            'refClass' => 'UserGroup'
        ));
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

Listing  
7-63

```
# schema.yml

# ...
Group:
  tableName: groups
  columns:
    name: string(30)
  relations:
    Users:
      class: User
      local: group_id
      foreign: user_id
      refClass: UserGroup
```



Please note that `group` is a reserved keyword so that is why we renamed the table to `groups` using the `setTableName` method. The other option is to turn on identifier quoting using the `Doctrine::ATTR_QUOTE_IDENTIFIERS` attribute so that the reserved word is escaped with quotes.

Listing  
7-64

```
$manager->setAttribute(Doctrine::Doctrine::ATTR_QUOTE_IDENTIFIERS, true);
```

Listing  
7-65

```
// models/UserGroup.php

class UserGroup extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('user_id', 'integer', null, array(
            'primary' => true
        ));

        $this->hasColumn('group_id', 'integer', null, array(
            'primary' => true
        ));
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

```
# schema.yml

# ...
UserGroup:
  columns:
    user_id:
      type: integer
      primary: true
    group_id:
      type: integer
      primary: true
```

*Listing  
7-66*

Notice how the relationship is bi-directional. Both `User` has many `Group` and `Group` has many `User`. This is required by Doctrine in order for many-to-many relationships to fully work.

Now lets play around with the new models and create a user and assign it some groups. First create a new `User` instance:

```
// test.php

// ...
$user = new User();
```

*Listing  
7-67*

Now add two new groups to the `User`:

```
// test.php

// ...
$user->Groups[0]->name = 'First Group';
```

*Listing  
7-68*

```
$user->Groups[1]->name = 'Second Group';
```

Now you can save the groups to the database:

Listing  
7-69

```
// test.php

// ...
$user->save();
```

Now you can delete the associations between user and groups it belongs to:

Listing  
7-70

```
// test.php

// ...
$user->UserGroup->delete();

$groups = new Doctrine_Collection(Doctrine::getTable('Group'));

$groups[0]->name = 'Third Group';

$groups[1]->name = 'Fourth Group';

$user->Groups[2] = $groups[0];
// $user will now have 3 groups

$user->Groups = $groups;
// $user will now have two groups 'Third Group' and 'Fourth Group'

$user->save();
```

Now if we inspect the \$user object data with the Doctrine\_Record::toArray():

Listing  
7-71

```
// test.php

// ...
print_r36($user->toArray(true));
```

The above example would produce the following output:

Listing  
7-72

```
$ php test.php
Array
(
    [id] => 1
    [is_active] => 1
```

---

36. [http://www.php.net/function.print\\_r](http://www.php.net/function.print_r)



```

[is_super_admin] => 0
[first_name] =>
[last_name] =>
[username] => default username
[password] =>
[type] =>
[created_at] => 2009-01-20 16:48:57
[updated_at] => 2009-01-20 16:48:57
[Groups] => Array
(
    [0] => Array
        (
            [id] => 3
            [name] => Third Group
        )

    [1] => Array
        (
            [id] => 4
            [name] => Fourth Group
        )

)

[UserGroup] => Array
(
)

)

```

## Self Referencing (Nest Relations)

### Non-Equal Nest Relations

```

// models/User.php

class User extends BaseUser
{
    public function setUp()
    {
        parent::setUp();

        // ...

        $this->hasMany('User as Parents', array(
            'local'    => 'parent_id',
            'foreign'  => 'child_id',
            'refClass' => 'UserReference'
        ))
    );

        $this->hasMany('User as Children', array(
            'local'    => 'child_id',
            'foreign'  => 'parent_id',
            'refClass' => 'UserReference'
        ))
    );
}

```

Listing  
7-73

```

    }
}

// models/UserReference.php

class UserReference extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('parent_id', 'integer', null, array(
            'primary' => true
        ));

        $this->hasColumn('child_id', 'integer', null, array(
            'primary' => true
        ));
    }
}

```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

*Listing  
7-74*

```

# schema.yml

# ...
User:
# ...
  relations:
    # ...
    Parents:
      class: User
      local: parent_id
      foreign: child_id
      refClass: UserReference
      foreignAlias: Children

UserReference:
  columns:
    parent_id:
      type: integer
      primary: true
    child_id:
      type: integer
      primary: true

```

### Equal Nest Relations

Equal nest relations are perfectly suitable for expressing relations where a class references to itself and the columns within the reference class are equal.

This means that when fetching related records it doesn't matter which column in the reference class has the primary key value of the main class.

The previous clause maybe hard to understand so lets take an example. We define a class called User which can have many friends. Notice here how we use the 'equal' option.

Listing  
7-75

```
// models/User.php

class User extends BaseUser
{
    public function setUp()
    {
        parent::setUp();

        // ...

        $this->hasMany('User as Friends', array(
            'local'    => 'user1',
            'foreign'  => 'user2',
            'refClass' => 'FriendReference',
            'equal'    => true,
        ))
    }
}

// models/FriendReference.php

class FriendReference extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('user1', 'integer', null, array(
            'primary' => true
        ))
    }

    $this->hasColumn('user2', 'integer', null, array(
        'primary' => true
    ))
}
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

```
# schema.yml

# ...
User:
# ...
relations:
  # ...
  Friends:
    class: User
    local: user1
    foreign: user2
    refClass: FriendReference
    equal: true
```

Listing  
7-76

```

FriendReference:
  columns:
    user1:
      type: integer
      primary: true
    user2:
      type: integer
      primary: true

```

Now let's define 4 users: Jack Daniels, John Brandy, Mikko Koskenkorva and Stefan Beer with Jack Daniels and John Brandy being buddies and Mikko Koskenkorva being the friend of all of them.

Listing  
7-77

```

// test.php

// ...
$daniels = new User();
$daniels->username = 'Jack Daniels';

$brandy = new User();
$brandy->username = 'John Brandy';

$koskenkorva = new User();
$koskenkorva->username = 'Mikko Koskenkorva';

$beer = new User();
$beer->username = 'Stefan Beer';

$daniels->Friends[0] = $brandy;

$koskenkorva->Friends[0] = $daniels;
$koskenkorva->Friends[1] = $brandy;
$koskenkorva->Friends[2] = $beer;

$conn->flush37();

```



Calling `Doctrine_Connection::flush()` will trigger an operation that saves all unsaved objects and wraps it in a single transaction.

---

Now if we access for example the friends of Stefan Beer it would return one user 'Mikko Koskenkorva':

Listing  
7-78

```

// test.php

// ...
$beer->free();
unset($beer);
$user = Doctrine::getTable('User')->findOneByUsername('Stefan Beer');

print_r38($user->Friends->toArray());

```

---

37. <http://www.php.net/function.flush>

38. [http://www.php.net/function.print\\_r](http://www.php.net/function.print_r)

Now when you execute `test.php` you will see the following:

```
$ php test.php
Array
(
    [0] => Array
        (
            [id] => 4
            [is_active] => 1
            [is_super_admin] => 0
            [first_name] =>
            [last_name] =>
            [username] => Mikko Koskenkorva
            [password] =>
            [type] =>
            [created_at] => 2009-01-20 16:53:13
            [updated_at] => 2009-01-20 16:53:13
        )
    )
)
```

*Listing  
7-79*

## Foreign Key Constraints

### Introduction

A foreign key constraint specifies that the values in a column (or a group of columns) must match the values appearing in some row of another table. In other words foreign key constraints maintain the referential integrity between two related tables.

Say you have the product table with the following definition:

```
// models/Product.php

class Product extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('name', 'string');
        $this->hasColumn('price', 'decimal', 18);
        $this->hasColumn('discounted_price', 'decimal', 18);
    }

    public function setUp()
    {
        $this->hasMany('Order as Orders', array(
            'local' => 'id',
            'foreign' => 'product_id'
        ));
    }
}
```

*Listing  
7-80*

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

*Listing 7-81* # schema.yml

```
# ...
Product:
  columns:
    name:
      type: string
    price:
      type: decimal(18)
    discounted_price:
      type: decimal(18)
  relations:
    Orders:
      class: Order
      local: id
      foreign: product_id
```

Let's also assume you have a table storing orders of those products. We want to ensure that the order table only contains orders of products that actually exist. So we define a foreign key constraint in the orders table that references the products table:

*Listing 7-82* // models/Order.php

```
class Order extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->setTableName('orders');
        $this->hasColumn('product_id', 'integer');
        $this->hasColumn('quantity', 'integer');
    }

    public function setUp()
    {
        $this->hasOne('Product', array(
            'local' => 'product_id',
            'foreign' => 'id'
        ));
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

*Listing 7-83* # schema.yml

```
# ...
Order:
  tableName: orders
  columns:
    product_id: integer
```

```

    quantity: integer
    relations:
        Product:
            local: product_id
            foreign: id

```



Foreign key columns are automatically indexed by Doctrine to ensure optimal performance when issuing queries involving the foreign key.

When exported the class `Order` would execute the following SQL:

```

CREATE TABLE orders (
    id integer PRIMARY KEY auto_increment,
    product_id integer REFERENCES products (id),
    quantity integer,
    INDEX product_id_idx (product_id)
)

```

*Listing  
7-84*

Now it is impossible to create `orders` with a `product_id` that does not appear in the `product` table.

We say that in this situation the `orders` table is the referencing table and the `products` table is the referenced table. Similarly, there are referencing and referenced columns.

## Integrity Actions

### CASCADE

Delete or update the row from the parent table and automatically delete or update the matching rows in the child table. Both `ON DELETE CASCADE` and `ON UPDATE CASCADE` are supported. Between two tables, you should not define several `ON UPDATE CASCADE` clauses that act on the same column in the parent table or in the child table.

### SET NULL

Delete or update the row from the parent table and set the foreign key column or columns in the child table to `NULL`. This is valid only if the foreign key columns do not have the `NOT NULL` qualifier specified. Both `ON DELETE SET NULL` and `ON UPDATE SET NULL` clauses are supported.

### NO ACTION

In standard SQL, `NO ACTION` means no action in the sense that an attempt to delete or update a primary key value is not allowed to proceed if there is a related foreign key value in the referenced table.

### RESTRICT

Rejects the delete or update operation for the parent table. `NO ACTION` and `RESTRICT` are the same as omitting the `ON DELETE` or `ON UPDATE` clause.

### SET DEFAULT

In the following example we define two classes, `User` and `Phonenumber` with their relation being one-to-many. We also add a foreign key constraint with `onDelete cascade` action. This means that every time a `user` is being deleted its associated `phonenumbers` will also be deleted.



The integrity constraints listed above are case sensitive and must be in upper case when being defined in your schema. Below is an example where the database delete cascading is used.

Listing  
7-85

```
class Phonenummer extends Doctrine_Record
{
    // ...

    public function setUp()
    {
        parent::setUp();

        // ...

        $this->hasOne('User', array(
            'local' => 'user_id',
            'foreign' => 'id',
            'onDelete' => 'CASCADE'
        ));
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

Listing  
7-86

```
# schema.yml

# ...
Phonenummer:
# ...
  relations:
    # ...
    User:
      local: user_id
      foreign: id
      onDelete: CASCADE
```



Notice how the integrity constraints are placed on the side where the foreign key exists. This is required in order for the integrity constraints to be exported to your database properly.

## Indexes

### Introduction

Indexes are used to find rows with specific column values quickly. Without an index, the database must begin with the first row and then read through the entire table to find the relevant rows.

The larger the table, the more this consumes time. If the table has an index for the columns in question, the database can quickly determine the position to seek to in the middle of the data file without having to look at all the data. If a table has 1,000 rows, this is at least 100 times faster than reading rows one-by-one.



Indexes come with a cost as they slow down the inserts and updates. However, in general you should **always** use indexes for the fields that are used in SQL where conditions.

## Adding indexes

You can add indexes by using `Doctrine_Record::index`. An example of adding a simple index to field called name:



The following index examples are not meant for you to actually add to your test Doctrine environment. They are only meant to demonstrate the API for adding indexes.

*Listing  
7-87*

```
class IndexTest extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('name', 'string');

        $this->index('myindex', array(
            'fields' => array('name')
        ));
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

*Listing  
7-88*

```
IndexTest:
  columns:
    name: string
  indexes:
    myindex:
      fields: [name]
```

An example of adding a multi-column index to field called name:

*Listing  
7-89*

```
class MultiColumnIndexTest extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('name', 'string');
        $this->hasColumn('code', 'string');

        $this->index('myindex', array(
            'fields' => array('name', 'code')
        ));
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

*Listing 7-90* **MultiColumnIndexTest:**

```
columns:
  name: string
  code: string
indexes:
  myindex:
    fields: [name, code]
```

An example of adding multiple indexes on same table:

*Listing 7-91*

```
class MultipleIndexTest extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('name', 'string');
        $this->hasColumn('code', 'string');
        $this->hasColumn('age', 'integer');

        $this->index('myindex', array(
            'fields' => array('name', 'code')
        ));

        $this->index('ageindex', array(
            'fields' => array('age')
        ));
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

*Listing 7-92* **MultipleIndexTest:**

```
columns:
  name: string
  code: string
  age: integer
indexes:
  myindex:
    fields: [name, code]
  ageindex:
    fields: [age]
```

## Index options

Doctrine offers many index options, some of them being database specific. Here is a full list of available options:

Name	Description
sorting	A string value that can be either 'ASC' or 'DESC'.

length	Index length (only some drivers support this).
primary	Whether or not the index is a primary index.
type	A string value that can be unique, fulltext, gist or gin.

Here is an example of how to create a unique index on the name column.

```
class MultipleIndexTest extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('name', 'string');
        $this->hasColumn('code', 'string');
        $this->hasColumn('age', 'integer');

        $this->index('myindex', array(
            'fields' => array(
                'name' => array(
                    'sorting' => 'ASC',
                    'length' => 10),
                'code'
            ),
            'type' => 'unique',
        ));
    }
}
```

Listing  
7-93

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the YAML Schema Files chapter:

```
MultipleIndexTest:
  columns:
    name: string
    code: string
    age: integer
  indexes:
    myindex:
      fields:
        name:
          sorting: ASC
          length: 10
        code: -
      type: unique
```

Listing  
7-94

## Special indexes

Doctrine supports many special indexes. These include Mysql FULLTEXT and Pgsq1 GiST indexes. In the following example we define a Mysql FULLTEXT index for the field 'content'.

```
// models/Article.php

class Article extends Doctrine_Record
```

Listing  
7-95

```

{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('name', 'string', 255);
        $this->hasColumn('content', 'string');

        $this->option('type', 'MyISAM');

        $this->index('content', array(
            'fields' => array('content'),
            'type'   => 'fulltext'
        ));
    }
}

```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

*Listing 7-96* # schema.yml

```

# ...
Article:
  options:
    type: MyISAM
  columns:
    name: string(255)
    content: string
  indexes:
    content:
      fields: [content]
      type: fulltext

```



Notice how we set the table type to MyISAM. This is because the `fulltext` index type is only supported in MyISAM so you will receive an error if you use something like InnoDB.

## Checks

You can create any kind of CHECK constraints by using the `check()` method of the `Doctrine_Record`. In the last example we add constraint to ensure that price is always higher than the discounted price.

*Listing 7-97*

```

// models/Product.php

class Product extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        // ...

        $this->check('price > discounted_price');
    }
}

```

```
// ...
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

```
# schema.yml

# ...
Product:
# ...
  checks:
    price_check: price > discounted_price
```

*Listing  
7-98*

Generates (in pgsq):

```
CREATE TABLE product (
  id INTEGER,
  price NUMERIC,
  discounted_price NUMERIC,
  PRIMARY KEY(id),
  CHECK (price >= 0),
  CHECK (price <= 1000000),
  CHECK (price > discounted_price))
```

*Listing  
7-99*



Some databases don't support CHECK constraints. When this is the case Doctrine simply skips the creation of check constraints.

If the Doctrine validators are turned on the given definition would also ensure that when a record is being saved its price is always greater than zero.

If some of the prices of the saved products within a transaction is below zero, Doctrine throws `Doctrine_Validator_Exception` and automatically rolls back the transaction.

## Table Options

Doctrine offers various table options. All table options can be set via the `Doctrine_Record::option` function.

For example if you are using MySQL and want to use INNODB tables it can be done as follows:

```
class MyInnoDBRecord extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('name', 'string');

        $this->option('type', 'INNODB');
    }
}
```

*Listing  
7-100*

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

*Listing 7-101* **MyInnoDBRecord:**

```
columns:
  name: string
options:
  type: INNODB
```

In the following example we set the collate and character set options:

*Listing 7-102*

```
class MyCustomOptionRecord extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('name', 'string');

        $this->option('collate', 'utf8_unicode_ci');
        $this->option('charset', 'utf8');
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

*Listing 7-103* **MyCustomOptionRecord:**

```
columns:
  name: string
options:
  collate: utf8_unicode_ci
  charset: utf8
```

It is worth noting that for certain databases (Firebird, MySQL and PostgreSQL) setting the charset option might not be enough for Doctrine to return data properly. For those databases, users are advised to also use the `setCharset` function of the database connection:

*Listing 7-104*

```
$conn = Doctrine_Manager::connection();
$conn->setCharset('utf8');
```

## Transitive Persistence

Doctrine offers both database and application level cascading operations. This section will explain in detail how to setup both application and database level cascades.

## Application-Level Cascades

Since it can be quite cumbersome to save and delete individual objects, especially if you deal with an object graph, Doctrine provides application-level cascading of operations.

### Save Cascades

You may already have noticed that `save()` operations are already cascaded to associated objects by default.

### Delete Cascades

Doctrine provides a second application-level cascade style: `delete`. Unlike the `save()` cascade, the `delete` cascade needs to be turned on explicitly as can be seen in the following code snippet:

```
// models/User.php

class User extends BaseUser
{
    // ...

    public function setUp()
    {
        parent::setUp();

        // ...

        $this->hasMany('Address as Addresses', array(
            'local' => 'id',
            'foreign' => 'user_id',
            'cascade' => array('delete')
        ));
    }
}
```

*Listing  
7-105*

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

```
# schema.yml

# ...
User:
# ...
  relations:
    # ...
    Addresses:
      class: Address
      local: id
      foreign: user_id
      cascade: [delete]
```

*Listing  
7-106*

The `cascade` option is used to specify the operations that are cascaded to the related objects on the application-level.



Please note that the only currently supported value is `delete`, more options will be added in future releases of Doctrine.

In the example above, Doctrine would cascade the deletion of a User to its associated Addresses. The following describes the generic procedure when you delete a record through `$record->delete()`:

1. Doctrine looks at the relations to see if there are any deletion cascades it needs to apply. If there are no deletion cascades, go to 3).
2. For each relation that has a delete cascade specified, Doctrine verifies that the objects that are the target of the cascade are loaded. That usually means that Doctrine fetches the related objects from the database if they're not yet loaded. (Exception: many-valued associations are always re-fetched from the database, to make sure all objects are loaded). For each associated object, proceed with step 1).
3. Doctrine orders all deletions and executes them in the most efficient way, maintaining referential integrity.

From this description one thing should be instantly clear: Application-level cascades happen on the object-level, meaning operations are cascaded from one object to another and in order to do that the participating objects need to be available.

This has some important implications:

- Application-level delete cascades don't perform well on many-valued associations when there are a lot of objects in the related collection (that is because they need to be fetched from the database, the actual deletion is pretty efficient).
- Application-level delete cascades do not skip the object lifecycle as database-level cascades do (see next chapter). Therefore all registered event listeners and other callback methods are properly executed in an application-level cascade.

## Database-Level Cascades

Some cascading operations can be done much more efficiently at the database level. The best example is the delete cascade.

Database-level delete cascades are generally preferable over application-level delete cascades except:

- Your database does not support database-level cascades (i.e. when using MySQL with MYISAM tables).
- You have listeners that listen on the object lifecycle and you want them to get invoked.

Database-level delete cascades are applied on the foreign key constraint. Therefore they're specified on that side of the relation that owns the foreign key. Picking up the example from above, the definition of a database-level cascade would look as follows:

Listing  
7-107

```
// models/Address.php

class Address extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('user_id', 'integer');
        $this->hasColumn('address', 'string', 255);
        $this->hasColumn('country', 'string', 255);
        $this->hasColumn('city', 'string', 255);
    }
}
```



```

        $this->hasColumn('state', 'string', 2);
        $this->hasColumn('postal_code', 'string', 25);
    }

    public function setUp()
    {
        $this->hasOne('User', array(
            'local' => 'user_id',
            'foreign' => 'id',
            'onDelete' => 'CASCADE'
        ));
    }
}

```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

```

# schema.yml

# ...
Address:
  columns:
    user_id: integer
    address: string(255)
    country: string(255)
    city: string(255)
    state: string(2)
    postal_code: string(25)
  relations:
    User:
      local: user_id
      foreign: id
      onDelete: CASCADE

```

*Listing  
7-108*

The `onDelete` option is translated to proper DDL/DML statements when Doctrine creates your tables.



Note that `'onDelete' => 'CASCADE'` is specified on the `Address` class, since the `Address` owns the foreign key (`user_id`) and database-level cascades are applied on the foreign key.

Currently, the only two supported database-level cascade styles are for `onDelete` and `onUpdate`. Both are specified on the side that owns the foreign key and applied to your database schema when Doctrine creates your tables.

## Conclusion

Now that we know everything about how to define our Doctrine models, I think we are ready to move on to learning about how to [doc work-with-models work with models] in your application.

This is a very large topic as well so take a break, grab a mountain dew and hurry back for the next chapter.

## Chapter 8

# Working with Models

## Define Test Schema



Remember to delete any existing schema information and models from previous chapters.

*Listing 8-1*

```
$ rm schema.yml
$ touch schema.yml
$ rm -rf models/*
```

For the next several examples we will use the following schema:

*Listing 8-2*

```
// models/User.php

class User extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('username', 'string', 255, array(
            'type' => 'string',
            'length' => '255'
        ));

        $this->hasColumn('password', 'string', 255, array(
            'type' => 'string',
            'length' => '255'
        ));
    }

    public function setUp()
    {
        $this->hasMany('Group as Groups', array(
            'refClass' => 'UserGroup',
            'local' => 'user_id',
            'foreign' => 'group_id'
        ));
    }
}
```

```
        $this->hasOne('Email', array(
            'local' => 'id',
            'foreign' => 'user_id'
        ))
    );

    $this->hasMany('Phonenumber as Phonenumbers', array(
        'local' => 'id',
        'foreign' => 'user_id'
    ))
);
}

// models/Email.php

class Email extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('user_id', 'integer', null, array(
            'type' => 'integer'
        ))
    );

        $this->hasColumn('address', 'string', 255, array(
            'type' => 'string',
            'length' => '255'
        ))
    );
}

    public function setUp()
    {
        $this->hasOne('User', array(
            'local' => 'user_id',
            'foreign' => 'id'
        ))
    );
}

// models/Phonenumber.php

class Phonenumber extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('user_id', 'integer', null, array(
            'type' => 'integer'
        ))
    );

        $this->hasColumn('phonenumber', 'string', 255, array(
            'type' => 'string',
            'length' => '255'
        ))
    );
}
```

```

        );
        $this->hasColumn('primary_num', 'boolean');
    }

    public function setUp()
    {
        $this->hasOne('User', array(
            'local' => 'user_id',
            'foreign' => 'id'
        ));
    }
}

// models/Group.php

class Group extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->setTableName('groups');
        $this->hasColumn('name', 'string', 255, array(
            'type' => 'string',
            'length' => '255'
        ));
    }

    public function setUp()
    {
        $this->hasMany('User as Users', array(
            'refClass' => 'UserGroup',
            'local' => 'group_id',
            'foreign' => 'user_id'
        ));
    }
}

// models/UserGroup.php

class UserGroup extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('user_id', 'integer', null, array(
            'type' => 'integer',
            'primary' => true
        ));

        $this->hasColumn('group_id', 'integer', null, array(
            'type' => 'integer',
            'primary' => true
        ));
    }
}

```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

```
# schema.yml
```

*Listing  
8-3*

```
User:
  columns:
    username: string(255)
    password: string(255)
  relations:
    Groups:
      class: Group
      local: user_id
      foreign: group_id
      refClass: UserGroup
      foreignAlias: Users

Email:
  columns:
    user_id: integer
    address: string(255)
  relations:
    User:
      foreignType: one

Phonenumber:
  columns:
    user_id: integer
    phonenumber: string(255)
    primary_num: boolean
  relations:
    User:
      foreignAlias: Phonenumbers

Group:
  tableName: groups
  columns:
    name: string(255)

UserGroup:
  columns:
    user_id:
      type: integer
      primary: true
    group_id:
      type: integer
      primary: true
```

Now that you have your schema defined you can instantiate the database by simply running the `generate.php` script we so conveniently created in the previous chapter.

```
$ php generate.php
```

*Listing  
8-4*

# Dealing with Relations

## Creating Related Records

Accessing related records in Doctrine is easy: you can use exactly the same getters and setters as for the record properties.

You can use any of the three ways above, however the last one is the recommended one for array portability purposes.

*Listing  
8-5*

```
// test.php

// ...
$user = new User();
$user['username'] = 'jwage';
$user->['password'] = 'changeme';

$email = $user->Email;

$email = $user->get('Email');

$email = $user['Email'];
```

When accessing a one-to-one related record that doesn't exist, Doctrine automatically creates the object. That is why the above

*Listing  
8-6*

```
// test.php

// ...
$user->Email->address = 'jonwage@gmail.com';
$user->save();
```

When accessing one-to-many related records, Doctrine creates a `Doctrine_Collection` for the related component. Lets say we have `users` and `phonenumbers` and their relation is one-to-many. You can add `phonenumbers` easily as shown above:

*Listing  
8-7*

```
// test.php

// ...
$user->Phonenumbers[]->phonenumbers = '123 123';
$user->Phonenumbers[]->phonenumbers = '456 123';
$user->Phonenumbers[]->phonenumbers = '123 777';
```

Now we can easily save the user and the associated `phonenumbers`:

*Listing  
8-8*

```
// test.php
```

```
// ...
$user->save();
```

Another way to easily create a link between two related components is by using `Doctrine_Record::link()`. It often happens that you have two existing records that you would like to relate (or link) to one another. In this case, if there is a relation defined between the involved record classes, you only need the identifiers of the related record(s):

Lets create a few new `Phonenumber` objects and keep track of the new phone number identifiers::

*Listing  
8-9*

```
// test.php

// ...
$phoneIds = array();

$phone1 = new Phonenumber();
$phone1['phonenumber'] = '555 202 7890';
$phone1->save();

$phoneIds[] = $phone1['id'];

$phone2 = new Phonenumber();
$phone2['phonenumber'] = '555 100 7890';
$phone2->save();

$phoneIds[] = $phone2['id'];
```

Let's link the phone numbers to the user, since the relation to `Phonenumbers` exists for the `User` record

*Listing  
8-10*

```
// test.php

$user = new User();
$user['username'] = 'jwage';
$user['password'] = 'changeme';
$user->save();

$user->link39('Phonenumbers', $phoneIds);
```

If a relation to the `User` record class is defined for the `Phonenumber` record class, you may even do this:

First create a user to work with:

*Listing  
8-11*

```
// test.php
```

---

39. <http://www.php.net/function.link>

```
// ...
$user = new User();
$user['username'] = 'jwage';
$user['password'] = 'changeme';
$user->save();
```

Now create a new Phonenummer instance:

*Listing  
8-12*

```
// test.php

// ...
$phone1 = new Phonenummer();
$phone1['phonenummer'] = '555 202 7890';
$phone1->save();
```

Now we can link the User to our Phonenummer:

*Listing  
8-13*

```
// test.php

// ...
$phone1->link40('User', array($user['id']));
```

We can create another phone number:

*Listing  
8-14*

```
// test.php

// ...
$phone2 = new Phonenummer();
$phone2['phonenummer'] = '555 100 7890';
$phone2->save();
```

Let's link this Phonenummer to our User too:

*Listing  
8-15*

```
// test.php

// ...
$phone2->link41('User', array($user['id']));
```

---

40. <http://www.php.net/function.link>

41. <http://www.php.net/function.link>



## Retrieving Related Records

You can retrieve related records by the very same `Doctrine_Record` methods as in the previous subchapter. Please note that whenever you access a related component that isn't already loaded Doctrine uses one SQL SELECT statement for the fetching, hence the following example executes 3 SQL SELECTs.

*Listing  
8-16*

```
// test.php

// ...
$user = Doctrine::getTable('User')->find(1);

echo $user->Email['address'];

echo $user->Phonenumber[0]->phonenumber;
```

Much more efficient way of doing this is using DQL. The following example uses only one SQL query for the retrieval of related components.

*Listing  
8-17*

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->from('User u')
    ->leftJoin('u.Email e')
    ->leftJoin('u.Phonenumber p')
    ->where('u.id = ?', 1);

$user = $q->fetchOne();

echo $user->Email['address'];

echo $user->Phonenumber[0]['phonenumber'];
```

## Updating Related Records

You can update the related records by calling `save` for each related object / collection individually or by calling `save` on the object that owns the other objects. You can also call `Doctrine_Connection::flush` which saves all pending objects.

*Listing  
8-18*

```
// test.php

// ...
$user->Email['address'] = 'koskenkorva@drinkmore.info';

$user->Phonenumber[0]['phonenumber'] = '123123';

$user->save();
```



In the above example calling `$user->save()` saves the email and phonenumber.

---

## Deleting Related Records

You can delete related records individually by calling `delete()` on a record or on a collection.

Here you can delete an individual related record:

*Listing  
8-19*

```
// test.php

// ...
$user->Email->delete();
```

You can delete an individual record from within a collection of records:

*Listing  
8-20*

```
// test.php

// ...
$user->Phonenumber[3]->delete();
```

You could delete the entire collection if you wanted:

*Listing  
8-21*

```
// test.php

// ...
$user->Phonenumbers->delete();
```

Or can just delete the entire user and all related objects:

*Listing  
8-22*

```
// test.php

// ...
$user->delete();
```

Usually in a typical web application the primary keys of the related objects that are to be deleted come from a form. In this case the most efficient way of deleting the related records is using DQL DELETE statement. Lets say we have once again Users and Phonenumbers with their relation being one-to-many. Deleting the given Phonenumbers for given user id can be achieved as follows:

*Listing  
8-23*

```
// test.php
```

```
// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->delete('Phonenumber')
    ->addWhere('user_id = ?', 5)
    ->whereIn('id', array(1, 2, 3));

$numDeleted = $q->execute();
```

Sometimes you may not want to delete the `Phonenumber` records but to simply unlink the relations by setting the foreign key fields to null. This can of course be achieved with DQL but perhaps to most elegant way of doing this is by using `Doctrine_Record::unlink()`.



Please note that the `unlink()` method is very smart. It not only sets the foreign fields for related `Phonenumber`s to null but it also removes all given `Phonenumber` references from the `User` object.

---

Lets say we have a `User` who has three `Phonenumber`s (with identifiers 1, 2 and 3). Now unlinking the `Phonenumber`s 1 and 3 can be achieved as easily as:

```
// test.php

// ...
$user->unlink42('Phonenumber', array(1, 3));

echo $user->Phonenumber->count43(); // 1
```

Listing  
8-24

## Working with Related Records

### Testing the Existence of a Relation

The below example would return false because the relationship has not been instantiated yet:

```
// test.php

// ...
$user = new User();
if (isset($user->Email)) {
    // ...
}
```

Listing  
8-25

Now the next example will return true because we instantiated the `Email` relationship:

```
// test.php
```

Listing  
8-26

---

42. <http://www.php.net/function.unlink>  
 43. <http://www.php.net/function.count>

```
// ...
$obj->Email = new Email();

if(isset($obj->Email)) {
    // ...
}
```

## Many-to-Many Relations



Doctrine requires that Many-to-Many relationships be bi-directional. For example: both User must have many Groups and Group must have many User.

### Creating a New Link

Lets say we have two classes User and Group which are linked through a GroupUser association class. When working with transient (new) records the fastest way for adding a User and couple of Groups for it is:

*Listing  
8-27*

```
// test.php

// ...
$user = new User();
$user->username = 'Some User';
$user->Groups[0]->username = 'Some Group';
$user->Groups[1]->username = 'Some Other Group';
$user->save();
```

However in real world scenarios you often already have existing groups, where you want to add a given user. The most efficient way of doing this is:

*Listing  
8-28*

```
// test.php

// ...
$groupUser = new GroupUser();
$groupUser->user_id = $userId;
$groupUser->group_id = $groupId;
$groupUser->save();
```

### Deleting a Link

The right way to delete links between many-to-many associated records is by using the DQL DELETE statement. Convenient and recommended way of using DQL DELETE is through the Query API.

*Listing  
8-29*

```
// test.php
```

```
// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->delete('GroupUser')
    ->addWhere('user_id = ?', 5)
    ->whereIn('group_id', array(1, 2));

$deleted = $q->execute();
```

Another way to unlink the relationships between related objects is through the `Doctrine_Record::unlink` method. However, you should avoid using this method unless you already have the parent model, since it involves querying the database first.

*Listing  
8-30*

```
// test.php

// ...
$user = Doctrine::getTable('User')->find(5);
$user->unlink44('Group', array(1, 2));
$user->save();
```

You can also unlink ALL relationships to Group by omitting the second argument:

*Listing  
8-31*

```
// test.php

// ...
$user->unlink45('Group');
```

While the obvious and convenient way of deleting a link between User and Group would be the following, you still should *\*NOT\** do this:

*Listing  
8-32*

```
// test.php

// ...
$user = Doctrine::getTable('User')->find(5);
$user->GroupUser->remove(0)->remove(1);
$user->save();
```

This is due to a fact that the call to `$user->GroupUser` loads all Group links for given User. This can be time-consuming task if the User belongs to many Groups. Even if the user belongs to few groups this will still execute an unnecessary SELECT statement.

---

44. <http://www.php.net/function.unlink>

45. <http://www.php.net/function.unlink>

## Fetching Objects

Normally when you fetch data from database the following phases are executed:

1. Sending the query to database
2. Retrieve the returned data from the database

In terms of object fetching we call these two phases the 'fetching' phase. Doctrine also has another phase called hydration phase. The hydration phase takes place whenever you are fetching structured arrays / objects. Unless explicitly specified everything in Doctrine gets hydrated.

Lets consider we have `Users` and `Phonenumbers` with their relation being one-to-many. Now consider the following plain sql query:

Listing  
8-33

```
// test.php

// ...
$sql = 'SELECT u.id, u.username, p.phonenumber FROM user u LEFT JOIN phonenumbers p
ON u.id = p.user_id';
$results = $conn->getDbh()->fetchAll($sql);
```

If you are familiar with these kind of one-to-many joins it may be familiar to you how the basic result set is constructed. Whenever the user has more than one phonenumbers there will be duplicated data in the result set. The result set might look something like:

<b>index</b>	<b>u.id</b>	<b>u.username</b>	<b>p.phonenumber</b>
0	1	Jack Daniels	123 123
1	1	Jack Daniels	456 456
2	2	John Beer	111 111
3	3	John Smith	222 222
4	3	John Smith	333 333
5	3	John Smith	444 444

Here Jack Daniels has two `Phonenumbers`, John Beer has one whereas John Smith has three. You may notice how clumsy this result set is. Its hard to iterate over it as you would need some duplicate data checking logic here and there.

Doctrine hydration removes all duplicated data. It also performs many other things such as:

1. Custom indexing of result set elements
2. Value casting and preparation
3. Value assignment listening
4. Makes multi-dimensional array out of the two-dimensional result set array, the number of dimensions is equal to the number of nested joins

Now consider the DQL equivalent of the SQL query we used:

Listing  
8-34

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
->select('u.id, u.username, p.phonenumber')
->from('User u')
```

```

->leftJoin('u.Phonenumbers p');

$results = $q->execute(array(), Doctrine::HYDRATE_ARRAY);

print_r46($results);

```

The structure of this hydrated array would look like:

```

$ php test.php
Array
(
    [0] => Array
        (
            [id] => 1
            [username] =>
            [Phonenumbers] => Array
                (
                    [0] => Array
                        (
                            [id] => 1
                            [phonenumbers] => 123 123
                        )
                    [1] => Array
                        (
                            [id] => 2
                            [phonenumbers] => 456 123
                        )
                    [2] => Array
                        (
                            [id] => 3
                            [phonenumbers] => 123 777
                        )
                )
        )
    // ...
)

```

Listing  
8-35

This structure also applies to the hydration of objects(records) which is the default hydration mode of Doctrine. The only differences are that the individual elements are represented as Doctrine\_Record objects and the arrays converted into Doctrine\_Collection objects. Whether dealing with arrays or objects you can:

1. Iterate over the results using *foreach*
2. Access individual elements using array access brackets
3. Get the number of elements using *count()* function
4. Check if given element exists using *isset()*
5. Unset given element using *unset()*

You should always use array hydration when you only need to data for access-only purposes, whereas you should use the record hydration when you need to change the fetched data.

---

46. [http://www.php.net/function.print\\_r](http://www.php.net/function.print_r)

The constant  $O(n)$  performance of the hydration algorithm is ensured by a smart identifier caching solution.



Doctrine uses an identity map internally to make sure that multiple objects for one record in a database don't ever exist. If you fetch an object and modify some of its properties, then re-fetch that same object later, the modified properties will be overwritten by default. You can change this behavior by changing the `ATTR_HYDRATE_OVERWRITE` attribute to `false`.

## Sample Queries

### Count number of records for a relationship:

Listing  
8-36

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('u.*, COUNT(DISTINCT p.id) AS num_phonenumbers')
    ->from('User u')
    ->leftJoin('u.Phonenumbers p')
    ->groupBy('u.id');

$users = $q->fetchArray();

echo $users[0]['Phonenumbers'][0]['num_phonenumbers'];
```

### Retrieve Users and the Groups they belong to:

Listing  
8-37

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->from('User u')
    ->leftJoin('u.Groups g');

$users = $q->fetchArray();

foreach ($users[0]['Groups'] as $group) {
    echo $group['name'];
}
```

### Simple WHERE with one parameter value:

Listing  
8-38

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->from('User u')
    ->where('u.username = ?', 'jwage');
```



```
$users = $q->fetchArray();
```

### Multiple WHERE with multiple parameters values:

*Listing  
8-39*

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->from('User u')
    ->leftJoin('u.Phonenumbers p')
    ->where('u.username = ? AND p.id = ?', array(1, 1));

$users = $q->fetchArray();
```



You can also optionally use the `andWhere()` method to add to the existing where parts.

---

*Listing  
8-40*

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->from('User u')
    ->leftJoin('u.Phonenumbers p')
    ->where('u.username = ?', 1)
    ->andWhere('p.id = ?', 1);

$users = $q->fetchArray();
```

### Using `whereIn()` convenience method:

*Listing  
8-41*

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->from('User u')
    ->whereIn('u.id', array(1, 2, 3));

$users = $q->fetchArray();
```

### The following is the same as above example:

*Listing  
8-42*

```
// test.php

// ...
```

```
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->from('User u')
    ->where('u.id IN (1, 2, 3)');

$users = $q->fetchArray();
```

### Using DBMS function in your WHERE:

Listing  
8-43

```
// test.php

// ...
$userEncryptedKey = 'a157a558ac00449c92294c7fab684ae0';
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->from('User u')
    ->where("MD5(CONCAT(u.username, 'secret_key')) = ?", $userEncryptedKey);

$user = $q->fetchOne();

$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->from('User u')
    ->where('LOWER(u.username) = LOWER(?)', 'jwage');

$user = $q->fetchOne();
```

### Limiting result sets using aggregate functions. Limit to users with more than one phonenumber:

Listing  
8-44

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('u.*, COUNT(DISTINCT p.id) AS num_phonenumbers')
    ->from('User u')
    ->leftJoin('u.Phonenumbers p')
    ->having('num_phonenumbers > 1')
    ->groupBy('u.id');

$users = $q->fetchArray();
```

### Join only primary phonenumbers using WITH:

Listing  
8-45

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->from('User u')
    ->leftJoin('u.Phonenumbers p WITH p.primary_num = ?', true);

$users = $q->fetchArray();
```

**Selecting certain columns for optimization:***Listing  
8-46*

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('u.username, p.phone')
    ->from('User u')
    ->leftJoin('u.Phonenumbers p');

$users = $q->fetchArray();
```

**Using a wildcard to select all User columns but only one Phonenum column:***Listing  
8-47*

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('u.*, p.phonenumber')
    ->from('User u')
    ->leftJoin('u.Phonenumbers p');

$users = $q->fetchArray();
```

**Perform DQL delete with simple WHERE:***Listing  
8-48*

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->delete('Phonenumber')
    ->addWhere('user_id = 5');

$deleted = $q->execute();
```

**Perform simple DQL update for a column:***Listing  
8-49*

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->update('User u')
    ->set('u.is_active', '?', true)
    ->where('u.id = ?', 1);
```

```
$updated = $q->execute();
```

### Perform DQL update with DBMS function. Make all usernames lowercase:

Listing  
8-50

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->update('User u')
    ->set('u.username', 'LOWER(u.username)');

$updated = $q->execute();
```

### Using mysql LIKE to search for records:

Listing  
8-51

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->from('User u')
    ->where('u.username LIKE ?', '%jwage%');

$users = $q->fetchArray();
```

### Use the INDEXBY keyword to hydrate the data where the key of record entry is the name of the column you assign:

Listing  
8-52

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->from('User u INDEXBY u.username');

$users = $q->fetchArray();
```

### Now we can print the user with the username of jwage:

Listing  
8-53

```
// test.php

// ...
print_r47($users['jwage']);
```

---

47. [http://www.php.net/function.print\\_r](http://www.php.net/function.print_r)

## Using positional parameters

Listing  
8-54

```
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->from('User u')
    ->where('u.username = ?', array('Arnold'));

$users = $q->fetchArray();
```

## Using named parameters

Listing  
8-55

```
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->from('User u')
    ->where('u.username = :username', array(':username' => 'Arnold'));

$users = $q->fetchArray();
```

## Using subqueries in your WHERE. Find users not in group named Group 2:

Listing  
8-56

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->from('User u')
    ->where('u.id NOT IN (SELECT u2.id FROM User u2 INNER JOIN u2.Groups g WHERE
g.name = ?)', 'Group 2');

$users = $q->fetchArray();
```



You can accomplish this without using subqueries. The two examples below would have the same result as the example above.

---

## Use INNER JOIN to retrieve users who have groups

Listing  
8-57

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->from('User u')
    ->innerJoin('u.Groups g WITH g.name != ?', 'Group 2')

$users = $q->fetchArray();
```

## Use WHERE condition to retrieve users who have groups

Listing  
8-58

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->from('User u')
    ->leftJoin('u.Groups g')
    ->where('g.name != ?', 'Group 2');

$users = $q->fetchArray();
```

Doctrine has many different ways you can execute queries and retrieve the data. Below are examples of all the different ways you can execute a query:

**First lets create a sample query to test with:**

Listing  
8-59

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->from('User u');
```

**You can use array hydration with the `fetchArray()` method:**

Listing  
8-60

```
$users = $q->fetchArray();
```

**You can also use array hydration by specifying the hydration method to the second argument of the `execute()` method:**

Listing  
8-61

```
// test.php

// ...
$users = $q->execute(array(), Doctrine::HYDRATE_ARRAY)
```

**You can also specify the hydration method by using the `setHydrationMethod()` method:**

Listing  
8-62

```
$users = $q->setHydrationMode(Doctrine::HYDRATE_ARRAY)->execute(); // So is this
```

**Sometimes you may want to totally bypass hydration and return the raw data that PDO returns:**

Listing  
8-63

```
// test.php
```

```
// ...
$users = $q->execute(array(), Doctrine::HYDRATE_NONE);
```

### If you want to just fetch one record from the query:

*Listing  
8-64*

```
// test.php

// ...
$user = $q->fetchOne();

// Fetch all and get the first from collection
$user = $q->execute()->getFirst();
</code>
```

## Field Lazy Loading

Whenever you fetch an object that has not all of its fields loaded from database then the state of this object is called proxy. Proxy objects can load the unloaded fields lazily.

In the following example we fetch all the Users with the username field loaded directly. Then we lazy load the password field:

*Listing  
8-65*

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('u.username')
    ->from('User u')
    ->where('u.id = ?', 1)

$user = $q->fetchOne();
```

The following lazy-loads the password field and executes one additional database query to retrieve the value:

*Listing  
8-66*

```
// test.php

// ...
$user->description;
```

Doctrine does the proxy evaluation based on loaded field count. It does not evaluate which fields are loaded on field-by-field basis. The reason for this is simple: performance. Field lazy-loading is very rarely needed in PHP world, hence introducing some kind of variable to check which fields are loaded would introduce unnecessary overhead to basic fetching.

## Arrays and Objects

`Doctrine_Record` and `Doctrine_Collection` provide methods to facilitate working with arrays: `toArray()`, `fromArray()` and `synchronizeWithArray()`.

### To Array

The `toArray()` method returns an array representation of your records or collections. It also accesses the relationships the objects may have. If you need to print a record for debugging purposes you can get an array representation of the object and print that.

Listing  
8-67

```
// test.php

// ...
print_r48($user->toArray());
```

If you want include the relationships in the array then you need to pass the `$deep` argument with a value of `true`:

Listing  
8-68

```
// test.php

// ...
print_r49($user->toArray(true));
```

### From Array

If you have an array of values you want to use to fill a record or even a collection, the `fromArray()` method simplifies this common task.

Listing  
8-69

```
// test.php

// ...
$data = array(
    'name' => 'John',
    'age' => '25',
    'Emails' => array(
        array('address' => 'john@mail.com'),
        array('address' => 'john@work.com')
    );

$user = new User();
$user->fromArray($data);
$user->save();
```

---

48. [http://www.php.net/function.print\\_r](http://www.php.net/function.print_r)

49. [http://www.php.net/function.print\\_r](http://www.php.net/function.print_r)



## Synchronize With Array

`synchronizeWithArray()` allows you to... well, synchronize a record with an array. So if you have an array representation of your model and modify a field, modify a relationship field or even delete or create a relationship, this changes will be applied to the record.

*Listing  
8-70*

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('u.*, g.*')
    ->from('User u')
    ->leftJoin('u.Groups g')
    ->where('id = ?', 1);

$user = $q->fetchOne();
```

Now convert it to an array and modify some of the properties:

*Listing  
8-71*

```
// test.php

// ...
$arrayUser = $user->toArray(true);

$arrayUser['username'] = 'New name';
$arrayUser['Group'][0]['name'] = 'Renamed Group';
$arrayUser['Group'][] = array('name' => 'New Group');
```

Now use the same query to retrieve the record and synchronize the record with the `$arrayUser` variable:

*Listing  
8-72*

```
// test.php

// ...
$user = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('u.*, g.*')
    ->from('User u')
    ->leftJoin('u.Groups g')
    ->where('id = ?', 1)
    ->fetchOne();

$user->synchronizeWithArray($arrayUser);
$user->save();
```

## Overriding the Constructor

Sometimes you want to do some operations at the creation time of your objects. Doctrine doesn't allow you to override the `Doctrine_Record::__construct()` method but provides an alternative:

*Listing  
8-73*

```
class User extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function construct()
    {
        $this->username = 'Test Name';
        $this->doSomething();
    }

    public function doSomething()
    {
        // ...
    }

    // ...
}
```

The only drawback is that it doesn't provide a way to pass parameters to the constructor.

## Conclusion

By now we should know absolutely everything there is to know about models. We know how to create them, load them and most importantly we know how to use them and work with columns and relationships. Now we are ready to move on to learn about how to use the DQL (Doctrine Query Language).

## Chapter 9

# DQL (Doctrine Query Language)

## Introduction

Doctrine Query Language (DQL) is an Object Query Language created for helping users in complex object retrieval. You should always consider using DQL (or raw SQL) when retrieving relational data efficiently (eg. when fetching users and their phonenumbers).



In this chapter we will execute dozens of examples of how to use the Doctrine Query Language. All of these examples assume you are using the schemas defined in the previous chapters, primarily the Defining Models chapter. We will define one additional model for our testing purposes which can be found right below this note.

*Listing  
9-1*

```
// models/Account.php

class Account extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('name', 'string', 255);
        $this->hasColumn('amount', 'decimal');
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the YAML Schema Files chapter:

*Listing  
9-2*

```
# schema.yml

# ...
Account:
  columns:
    name: string(255)
    amount: decimal
```

When compared to using raw SQL, DQL has several benefits:

- From the start it has been designed to retrieve records(objects) not result set rows

- DQL understands relations so you don't have to type manually sql joins and join conditions
- DQL is portable on different databases
- DQL has some very complex built-in algorithms like (the record limit algorithm) which can help developer to efficiently retrieve objects
- It supports some functions that can save time when dealing with one-to-many, many-to-many relational data with conditional fetching.

If the power of DQL isn't enough, you should consider using the RawSql API for object population.

You may already be familiar with the following syntax:



DO NOT USE THE FOLLOWING CODE. It uses many sql queries for object population.

---

Listing  
9-3

```
// test.php

// ...
$users = Doctrine::getTable('User')->findAll();

foreach($users as $user) {
    echo $user->username . " has phonenumbers: \n";

    foreach($user->Phonenumbers as $phonenum) {
        echo $phonenum->phonenum . "\n";
    }
}
```



Here is the same code but implemented more efficiently using only one SQL query for object population.

---

Listing  
9-4

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->from('User u')
    ->leftJoin('u.Phonenumbers p');

echo $q->getSql();
```

Lets take a look at the SQL that would be generated by the above query:

Listing  
9-5

```
SELECT
u.id AS u__id,
u.is_active AS u__is_active,
u.is_super_admin AS u__is_super_admin,
u.first_name AS u__first_name,
u.last_name AS u__last_name,
u.username AS u__username,
```

```

u.password AS u__password,
u.type AS u__type,
u.created_at AS u__created_at,
u.updated_at AS u__updated_at,
p.id AS p__id,
p.user_id AS p__user_id,
p.phonenumber AS p__phonenumber
FROM user u
LEFT JOIN phonenumber p ON u.id = p.user_id

```

Now lets execute the query and play with the data:

```

// test.php

// ...
$users = $q->execute();

foreach($users as $user) {
    echo $user->username . " has phonenumbers: \n";

    foreach($user->Phonenumbers as $phonenumber) {
        echo $phonenumber->phonenumber . "\n";
    }
}

```

*Listing  
9-6*



Using double quotes (") in DQL strings is discouraged. This is sensible in MySQL standard but in DQL it can be confused as an identifier. Instead it is recommended to use prepared statements for your values and it will be escaped properly.

---

## SELECT queries

SELECT statement syntax:

```

SELECT
    [ALL | DISTINCT]
    <select_expr>,
    ...
    [
FROM <components>
    [
WHERE <where_condition>]
    [
GROUP BY <groupby_expr>
        [ASC | DESC],
    ... ]
    [
HAVING <where_condition>]
    [
ORDER BY <orderby_expr>
        [ASC | DESC],
    ...]
    [

```

*Listing  
9-7*

```
LIMIT <row_count>
OFF
SET <offset>}]
```

The **SELECT** statement is used for the retrieval of data from one or more components.

Each `select_expr` indicates a column or an aggregate function value that you want to retrieve. There must be at least one `select_expr` in every **SELECT** statement.

First insert a few sample Account records:

Listing  
9-8

```
// test.php

// ...
$account = new Account();
$account->name = 'test 1';
$account->amount = '100.00';
$account->save();

$account = new Account();
$account->name = 'test 2';
$account->amount = '200.00';
$account->save();
```

Be sure to execute `test.php`:

Listing  
9-9

```
$ php test.php
```

Now you can test the selecting of the data with these next few sample queries:

Listing  
9-10

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('a.name')
    ->from('Account a');

echo $q->getSql();
```

Lets take a look at the SQL that would be generated by the above query:

Listing  
9-11

```
SELECT
a.id AS a__id,
a.name AS a__name
FROM account a
```

Listing  
9-12

```
// test.php

// ...
$accounts = $q->execute();
print_r50($accounts->toArray());
```

The above example would produce the following output:

```
$ php test.php
Array
(
    [0] => Array
        (
            [id] => 1
            [name] => test 1
            [amount] =>
        )

    [1] => Array
        (
            [id] => 2
            [name] => test 2
            [amount] =>
        )

)
```

*Listing  
9-13*

An asterisk can be used for selecting all columns from given component. Even when using an asterisk the executed sql queries never actually use it (Doctrine converts asterisk to appropriate column names, hence leading to better performance on some databases).

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('a.*')
    ->from('Account a');

echo $q->getSql();
```

*Listing  
9-14*

Compare the generated SQL from the last query example to the SQL generated by the query right above:

```
SELECT
a.id AS a__id,
a.name AS a__name,
a.amount AS a__amount
FROM account a
```

*Listing  
9-15*



Notice how the asterisk is replaced by all the real column names that exist in the Account model.

---

Now let's execute the query and inspect the results:

---

```
50. http://www.php.net/function.print_r
```

Listing  
9-16

```
// test.php

// ...
$accounts = $q->execute();
print_r51($accounts->toArray());
```

The above example would produce the following output:

Listing  
9-17

```
$ php test.php
Array
(
    [0] => Array
        (
            [id] => 1
            [name] => test 1
            [amount] => 100.00
        )

    [1] => Array
        (
            [id] => 2
            [name] => test 2
            [amount] => 200.00
        )

)
```

FROM clause components indicates the component or components from which to retrieve records.

Listing  
9-18

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('u.username, p.*')
    ->from('User u')
    ->leftJoin('u.Phonenumbers p')

echo $q->getSql();
```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

Listing  
9-19

```
SELECT
u.id AS u__id,
u.username AS u__username,
p.id AS p__id,
p.user_id AS p__user_id,
p.phonenumber AS p__phonenumber
FROM user u
LEFT JOIN phonenumber p ON u.id = p.user_id
```

---

51. [http://www.php.net/function.print\\_r](http://www.php.net/function.print_r)



The **WHERE** clause, if given, indicates the condition or conditions that the records must satisfy to be selected. `where_condition` is an expression that evaluates to true for each row to be selected. The statement selects all rows if there is no **WHERE** clause.

*Listing  
9-20*

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('a.name')
    ->from('Account a')
    ->where('a.amount > 2000');

echo $q->getSql();
```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

*Listing  
9-21*

```
SELECT
a.id AS a__id,
a.name AS a__name
FROM account a
WHERE a.amount > 2000
```

In the **WHERE** clause, you can use any of the functions and operators that DQL supports, except for aggregate (summary) functions. The **HAVING** clause can be used for narrowing the results with aggregate functions:

*Listing  
9-22*

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('u.username')
    ->from('User u')
    ->leftJoin('u.Phonenumbers p')
    ->having('COUNT(p.id) > 3');

echo $q->getSql();
```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

*Listing  
9-23*

```
SELECT
u.id AS u__id,
u.username AS u__username
FROM user u
LEFT JOIN phonenumbers p ON u.id = p.user_id
HAVING COUNT(p.id) > 3
```

The **ORDER BY** clause can be used for sorting the results

*Listing  
9-24*

```
// test.php

// ...
```

```
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('u.username')
    ->from('User u')
    ->orderBy('u.username');

echo $q->getSql();
```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

*Listing 9-25*

```
SELECT
u.id AS u__id,
u.username AS u__username
FROM user u
ORDER BY u.username
```

The `LIMIT` and `OFFSET` clauses can be used for efficiently limiting the number of records to a given `row_count`

*Listing 9-26*

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('u.username')
    ->from('User u')
    ->limit(20);

echo $q->getSql();
```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

*Listing 9-27*

```
SELECT
u.id AS u__id,
u.username AS u__username
FROM user u
LIMIT 20
```

## DISTINCT keyword

## Aggregate values

Aggregate value `SELECT` syntax:

*Listing 9-28*

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('u.id, COUNT(t.id) AS num_threads')
    ->from('User u, u.Threads t')
    ->where('u.id = ?', 1)
    ->groupBy('u.id');
```

```
echo $q->getSql();
```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

```
SELECT
u.id AS u__id,
COUNT(f.id) AS f__0
FROM user u
LEFT JOIN forum__thread f ON u.id = f.user_id
WHERE u.id = ?
GROUP BY u.id
```

*Listing  
9-29*

Now execute the query and inspect the results:

```
// test.php

// ...
$users = $q->execute();
```

*Listing  
9-30*

You can easily access the `num_threads` data with the following code:

```
// test.php

// ...
echo $users->num_threads . ' threads found';
```

*Listing  
9-31*

## UPDATE queries

UPDATE statement syntax:

```
UPDATE <component_name>
SET <col_name1> = <expr1> ,
<col_name2> = <expr2>
WHERE <where_condition>
ORDER BY <order_by>
LIMIT <record_count>
```

*Listing  
9-32*

- The **UPDATE** statement updates columns of existing records in `component_name` with new values and returns the number of affected records.
- The **SET** clause indicates which columns to modify and the values they should be given.
- The optional **WHERE** clause specifies the conditions that identify which records to update. Without **WHERE** clause, all records are updated.
- The optional **ORDER BY** clause specifies the order in which the records are being updated.
- The **LIMIT** clause places a limit on the number of records that can be updated. You can use **LIMIT row\_count** to restrict the scope of the **UPDATE**. A **LIMIT** clause is a **rows-matched restriction** not a rows-changed restriction. The statement stops as

soon as it has found `record_count` rows that satisfy the `WHERE` clause, whether or not they actually were changed.

Listing  
9-33

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->update('Account')
    ->set('amount', 'amount + 200')
    ->where('id > 200');

echo $q->getSql();
```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

Listing  
9-34

```
UPDATE account
SET amount = amount + 200
WHERE id > 200
```

Now to perform the update is simple. Just execute the query:

Listing  
9-35

```
// test.php

// ...
$rows = $q->execute();

echo $rows;
```

## DELETE Queries

Listing  
9-36

```
DELETE
FROM <component_name>
WHERE <where_condition>
ORDER BY <order_by>
LIMIT <record_count>
```

- The `DELETE` statement deletes records from `component_name` and returns the number of records deleted.
- The optional `WHERE` clause specifies the conditions that identify which records to delete. Without `WHERE` clause, all records are deleted.
- If the `ORDER BY` clause is specified, the records are deleted in the order that is specified.
- The `LIMIT` clause places a limit on the number of rows that can be deleted. The statement will stop as soon as it has deleted `record_count` records.

Listing  
9-37

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
```

```

->delete('Account a')
->where('a.id > 3');

echo $q->getSql();

```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

```

DELETE
FROM account
WHERE id > 3

```

*Listing  
9-38*

Now executing the `DELETE` query is just as you would think:

```

// test.php

// ...
$rows = $q->execute();

echo $rows;

```

*Listing  
9-39*



When executing DQL `UPDATE` and `DELETE` queries the executing of a query returns the number of affected rows.

---

## FROM clause

Syntax:

```
FROM <component_reference> [[LEFT | INNER] JOIN <component_reference>] ...
```

*Listing  
9-40*

The `FROM` clause indicates the component or components from which to retrieve records. If you name more than one component, you are performing a join. For each table specified, you can optionally specify an alias.

Consider the following DQL query:

```

// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('u.id')
    ->from('User u');

echo $q->getSql();

```

*Listing  
9-41*

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

*Listing  
9-42*

```
SELECT
u.id AS u__id
FROM user u
```

Here `User` is the name of the class (component) and `u` is the alias. You should always use short aliases, since most of the time those make the query much shorter and also because when using for example caching the cached form of the query takes less space when short aliases are being used.

## JOIN syntax

DQL JOIN Syntax:

```
JOIN <component_reference1> [ON | WITH] <join_condition1> [INDEXBY]
<map_condition1>,
[[LEFT | INNER] JOIN <component_reference2>] [ON | WITH] <join_condition2>
[INDEXBY] <map_condition2>,
...
[[LEFT | INNER] JOIN <component_referenceN>] [ON | WITH] <join_conditionN>
[INDEXBY] <map_conditionN>
```

DQL supports two kinds of joins INNER JOINS and LEFT JOINS. For each joined component, you can optionally specify an alias.

The default join type is `LEFT JOIN`. This join can be indicated by the use of either `LEFT JOIN` clause or simply `,`, hence the following queries are equal:

*Listing  
9-43*

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('u.id, p.id')
    ->from('User u')
    ->leftJoin('u.Phonenumbers p');

$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('u.id, p.id')
    ->from('User u, u.Phonenumbers p');

echo $q->getSql();
```



The recommended form is the first because it is more verbose and easier to read and understand what is being done.

---

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

*Listing  
9-44*

```
SELECT
u.id AS u__id,
p.id AS p__id
FROM user u
LEFT JOIN phonenum p ON u.id = p.user_id
```



Notice how the JOIN condition is automatically added for you. This is because Doctrine knows how User and Phonenumbers are related so it is able to add it for you.

INNER JOIN produces an intersection between two specified components (that is, each and every record in the first component is joined to each and every record in the second component). So basically INNER JOIN can be used when you want to efficiently fetch for example all users which have one or more phonenumbers.

By default DQL auto-adds the primary key join condition:

*Listing  
9-45*

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('u.id, p.id')
    ->from('User u')
    ->leftJoin('u.Phonenumbers p');

echo $q->getSql();
```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

*Listing  
9-46*

```
SELECT
u.id AS u__id,
p.id AS p__id
FROM User u
LEFT JOIN Phonenumbers p ON u.id = p.user_id
```

## ON keyword

If you want to override this behavior and add your own custom join condition you can do it with the ON keyword. Consider the following DQL query:

*Listing  
9-47*

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('u.id, p.id')
    ->from('User u')
    ->leftJoin('u.Phonenumbers p ON u.id = 2');

echo $q->getSql();
```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

*Listing  
9-48*

```
SELECT
u.id AS u__id,
p.id AS p__id
FROM User u
LEFT JOIN Phonenumbers p ON u.id = 2
```



Notice how the **ON** condition that would be normally automatically added is not present and the user specified condition is used instead.

## WITH keyword

Most of the time you don't need to override the primary join condition, rather you may want to add some custom conditions. This can be achieved with the **WITH** keyword.

Listing  
9-49

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('u.id, p.id')
    ->from('User u')
    ->leftJoin('u.Phonenumbers p WITH u.id = 2');

echo $q->getSql();
```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

Listing  
9-50

```
SELECT
u.id AS u__id,
p.id AS p__id
FROM User u
LEFT JOIN Phonenumbers p ON u.id = p.user_id
AND u.id = 2
```



Notice how the **ON** condition isn't completely replaced. Instead the conditions you specify are appended on to the automatic condition that is added for you.

The `Doctrine_Query` API offers two convenience methods for adding JOINS. These are called `innerJoin()` and `leftJoin()`, which usage should be quite intuitive as shown below:

Listing  
9-51

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('u.id')
    ->from('User u')
    ->leftJoin('u.Groups g')
    ->innerJoin('u.Phonenumbers p WITH u.id > 3')
    ->leftJoin('u.Email e');

echo $q->getSql();
```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

Listing  
9-52

```
SELECT
u.id AS u__id
```



```
FROM user u
LEFT JOIN user_group u2 ON u.id = u2.user_id
LEFT JOIN groups g ON g.id = u2.group_id
INNER JOIN phonenumber p ON u.id = p.user_id
AND u.id > 3
LEFT JOIN email e ON u.id = e.user_id
```

## INDEXBY keyword

The INDEXBY keyword offers a way of mapping certain columns as collection / array keys. By default Doctrine indexes multiple elements to numerically indexed arrays / collections. The mapping starts from zero. In order to override this behavior you need to use INDEXBY keyword as shown above:

*Listing  
9-53*

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->from('User u INDEXBY u.username');

$users = $q->execute();
```



The INDEXBY keyword does not alter the generated SQL. It is simply used internally by Doctrine\_Query to hydrate the data with the specified column as the key of each record in the collection.

Now the users in \$users collection are accessible through their names:

*Listing  
9-54*

```
// test.php

// ...
echo $user['jack daniels']->id;
```

The INDEXBY keyword can be applied to any given JOIN. This means that any given component can have each own indexing behavior. In the following we use distinct indexing for both Users and Groups.

*Listing  
9-55*

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->from('User u INDEXBY u.username')
    ->innerJoin('u.Groups g INDEXBY g.name');

$users = $q->execute();
```

Now lets print out the drinkers club's creation date.

Listing  
9-56

```
// test.php

// ...
echo $users['jack daniels']->Groups['drinkers club']->createdAt;
```

## WHERE clause

Syntax:

Listing  
9-57

WHERE <where\_condition>

- The WHERE clause, if given, indicates the condition or conditions that the records must satisfy to be selected.
- where\_condition is an expression that evaluates to true for each row to be selected.
- The statement selects all rows if there is no WHERE clause.
- When narrowing results with aggregate function values HAVING clause should be used instead of WHERE clause

You can use the `addWhere()`, `andWhere()`, `orWhere()`, `whereIn()`, `andWhereIn()`, `orWhereIn()`, `whereNotIn()`, `andWhereNotIn()`, `orWhereNotIn()` functions for building complex where conditions using `Doctrine_Query` objects.

Here is an example where we retrieve all active registered users or super administrators:

Listing  
9-58

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
->select('u.id')
->from('User u')
->where('u.type = ?', 'registered')
->andWhere('u.is_active = ?', 1)
->orWhere('u.is_super_admin = ?', 1);

echo $q->getSql();
```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

Listing  
9-59

```
SELECT
u.id AS u__id
FROM user u
WHERE u.type = ?
AND u.is_active = ?
OR u.is_super_admin = ?
```

# Conditional expressions

## Literals

### Strings

A string literal is enclosed in single quotes; for example: 'literal'. A string literal that includes a single quote is represented by two single quotes; for example: 'literal's'.

*Listing  
9-60*

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('u.id, u.username')
    ->from('User u')
    ->where('u.username = ?', 'Vincent');

echo $q->getSql();
```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

*Listing  
9-61*

```
SELECT
u.id AS u__id,
u.username AS u__username
FROM user u
WHERE u.username = ?
```



Because we passed the value of the `username` as a parameter to the `where()` method it is not included in the generated SQL. PDO handles the replacement when you execute the query. To check the parameters that exist on a `Doctrine_Query` instance you can use the `getParams()` method.

### Integers

Integer literals support the use of PHP integer literal syntax.

*Listing  
9-62*

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('a.id')
    ->from('User u')
    ->where('u.id = 4');

echo $q->getSql();
```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

*Listing  
9-63*

```
SELECT
u.id AS u__id
```

```
FROM user u
WHERE u.id = 4
```

## Floats

Float literals support the use of PHP float literal syntax.

*Listing  
9-64*

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('a.id')
    ->from('Account a')
    ->where('a.amount = 432.123');

echo $q->getSql();
```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

*Listing  
9-65*

```
SELECT
a.id AS a__id
FROM account a
WHERE a.amount = 432.123
```

## Booleans

The boolean literals are true and false.

*Listing  
9-66*

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('a.id')
    ->from('User u')
    ->where('u.is_super_admin = true');

echo $q->getSql();
```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

*Listing  
9-67*

```
SELECT
u.id AS u__id
FROM user u
WHERE u.is_super_admin = 1
```

## Enums

The enumerated values work in the same way as string literals.

*Listing  
9-68*

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
```

```

->select('a.id')
->from('User u')
->where("u.type = 'admin'");

echo $q->getSql();

```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

```

SELECT
u.id AS u__id
FROM user u
WHERE u.type = 'admin'

```

*Listing  
9-69*

Predefined reserved literals are case insensitive, although its a good standard to write them in uppercase.

## Input parameters

Here are some examples of using positional parameters:

### Single positional parameter:

```

// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
->select('u.id')
->from('User u')
->where('u.username = ?', array('Arnold'));

echo $q->getSql();

```

*Listing  
9-70*



When the passed parameter for a positional parameter contains only one value you can simply pass a single scalar value instead of an array containing one value.

---

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

```

SELECT
u.id AS u__id
FROM user u
WHERE u.username = ?

```

*Listing  
9-71*

### Multiple positional parameters:

```

// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
->from('User u')
->where('u.id > ? AND u.username LIKE ?', array(50, 'A%'));

```

*Listing  
9-72*

```
echo $q->getSql();
```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

*Listing 9-73*

```
SELECT
u.id AS u__id
FROM user u
WHERE (u.id > ?
AND u.username LIKE ?)
```

Here are some examples of using named parameters:

### **Single named parameter:**

*Listing 9-74*

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('u.id')
    ->from('User u')
    ->where('u.username = :name', array(':name' => 'Arnold'));

echo $q->getSql();
```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

*Listing 9-75*

```
SELECT
u.id AS u__id
FROM user u
WHERE u.username = :name
```

### **Named parameter with a LIKE statement:**

*Listing 9-76*

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('u.id')
    ->from('User u')
    ->where('u.id > :id', array(':id' => 50))
    ->andWhere('u.username LIKE :name', array(':name' => 'A%'));

echo $q->getSql();
```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

*Listing 9-77*

```
SELECT
u.id AS u__id
FROM user u
```

```
WHERE u.id > :id
AND u.username LIKE :name
```

## Operators and operator precedence

The operators are listed below in order of decreasing precedence.

Operator	Description
.	Navigation operator
<i>Arithmetic operators:</i>	
+, -	unary
*, /	multiplication and division
+, -	addition and subtraction
=, >, >=, <, <=, <> (not equal), [NOT] LIKE, [NOT] IN, IS [NOT] NULL, IS [NOT] EMPTY	Comparison operators
<i>Logical operators:</i>	
NOT	
AND	
OR	

## In expressions

Syntax:

```
<operand> IN (<subquery>|<value list>)
```

Listing  
9-78

An IN conditional expression returns true if the *operand* is found from result of the *subquery* or if its in the specified comma separated *value list*, hence the IN expression is always false if the result of the subquery is empty.

When *value list* is being used there must be at least one element in that list.

Here is an example where we use a subquery for the IN:

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->from('User u')
    ->where('u.id IN (SELECT u.id FROM User u INNER JOIN u.Groups g WHERE g.id =
?)', 1);

echo $q->getSql();
```

Listing  
9-79

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

```
SELECT
u.id AS u__id
FROM user u
WHERE u.id IN (SELECT
```

Listing  
9-80

```

u2.id AS u2__id
FROM user u2
INNER JOIN user_group u3 ON u2.id = u3.user_id
INNER JOIN groups g ON g.id = u3.group_id
WHERE g.id = ?)

```

Here is an example where we just use a list of integers:

Listing  
9-81

```

// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('u.id')
    ->from('User u')
    ->whereIn('u.id', array(1, 3, 4, 5));

echo $q->getSql();

```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

Listing  
9-82

```

SELECT
u.id AS u__id
FROM user u
WHERE u.id IN (?,
?,
?,
?)

```

## Like Expressions

Syntax:

Listing  
9-83

```
string_expression [NOT] LIKE pattern_value [ESCAPE escape_character]
```

The `string_expression` must have a string value. The `pattern_value` is a string literal or a string-valued input parameter in which an underscore (`_`) stands for any single character, a percent (`%`) character stands for any sequence of characters (including the empty sequence), and all other characters stand for themselves. The optional `escape_character` is a single-character string literal or a character-valued input parameter (i.e., `char` or `Character`) and is used to escape the special meaning of the underscore and percent characters in `pattern_value`.

Examples:

- `address.phone LIKE '12%3'` is true for '123' '12993' and false for '1234'
- `asentence.word LIKE 'l_se'` is true for 'lose' and false for 'loose'
- `aword.underscored LIKE '\_%' ESCAPE '\'` is true for '\_foo' and false for 'bar'
- `address.phone NOT LIKE '12%3'` is false for '123' and '12993' and true for '1234'

If the value of the `string_expression` or `pattern_value` is `NULL` or unknown, the value of the `LIKE` expression is unknown. If the `escape_character` is specified and is `NULL`, the value of the `LIKE` expression is unknown.

Find all users whose email ends with '@gmail.com':



Listing  
9-84

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('u.id')
    ->from('User u')
    ->leftJoin('u.Email e')
    ->where('e.address LIKE ?', '%@gmail.com');

echo $q->getSql();
```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

Listing  
9-85

```
SELECT
u.id AS u__id
FROM user u
LEFT JOIN email e ON u.id = e.user_id
WHERE e.address LIKE ?
```

Find all users whose name starts with letter 'A':

Listing  
9-86

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('u.id')
    ->from('User u')
    ->where('u.username LIKE ?', 'A%');

echo $q->getSql();
```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

Listing  
9-87

```
SELECT
u.id AS u__id
FROM user u
WHERE u.username LIKE ?
```

## Exists Expressions

Syntax:

```
<operand> [NOT ]EXISTS (<subquery>)
```

Listing  
9-88

The EXISTS operator returns TRUE if the subquery returns one or more rows and FALSE otherwise.

The NOT EXISTS operator returns TRUE if the subquery returns 0 rows and FALSE otherwise.



For the next few examples we need to add the ReaderLog model.

---

Listing  
9-89

```
// models/ReaderLog.php

class ReaderLog extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('article_id', 'integer', null, array(
            'primary' => true
        ));

        $this->hasColumn('user_id', 'integer', null, array(
            'primary' => true
        ));
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

Listing  
9-90

```
# schema.yml

# ...
ReaderLog:
  columns:
    article_id:
      type: integer
      primary: true
    user_id:
      type: integer
      primary: true
```



After adding the ReaderLog model don't forget to run the `generate.php` script!

---

Listing  
9-91

```
$ php generate.php
```

Now we can run some tests! First, finding all articles which have readers:

Listing  
9-92

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('a.id')
    ->from('Article a')
    ->where('EXISTS (SELECT r.id FROM ReaderLog r WHERE r.article_id = a.id)');
```

```
echo $q->getSql();
```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

```
SELECT
a.id AS a__id
FROM article a
WHERE EXISTS (SELECT
r.id AS r__id
FROM reader_log r
WHERE r.article_id = a.id)
```

*Listing  
9-93*

Finding all articles which don't have readers:

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('a.id')
    ->from('Article a')
    ->where(NOT EXISTS (SELECT r.id FROM ReaderLog r WHERE r.article_id = a.id));

echo $q->getSql();
```

*Listing  
9-94*

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

```
SELECT
a.id AS a__id
FROM article a
WHERE NOT EXISTS (SELECT
r.id AS r__id
FROM reader_log r
WHERE r.article_id = a.id)
```

*Listing  
9-95*

## All and Any Expressions

Syntax:

```
operand comparison_operator ANY (subquery)
operand comparison_operator SOME (subquery)
operand comparison_operator ALL (subquery)
```

*Listing  
9-96*

An ALL conditional expression returns true if the comparison operation is true for all values in the result of the subquery or the result of the subquery is empty. An ALL conditional expression is false if the result of the comparison is false for at least one row, and is unknown if neither true nor false.

```
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->from('C')
    ->where('C.col1 < ALL (FROM C2(col1))');
```

*Listing  
9-97*

An ANY conditional expression returns true if the comparison operation is true for some value in the result of the subquery. An ANY conditional expression is false if the result of the subquery is empty or if the comparison operation is false for every value in the result of the subquery, and is unknown if neither true nor false.

Listing  
9-98

```
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->from('C')
    ->where('C.col1 > ANY (FROM C2(col1))');
```

The keyword SOME is an alias for ANY.

Listing  
9-99

```
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->from('C')
    ->where('C.col1 > SOME (FROM C2(col1))');
```

The comparison operators that can be used with ALL or ANY conditional expressions are =, <, <=, >, >=, <>. The result of the subquery must be same type with the conditional expression.

NOT IN is an alias for <> ALL. Thus, these two statements are equal:

Listing  
9-100

```
FROM C
WHERE C.col1 <> ALL (
FROM C2(col1));
```

```
FROM C
WHERE C.col1 NOT IN (
FROM C2(col1));
```

Listing  
9-101

```
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->from('C')
    ->where('C.col1 <> ALL (FROM C2(col1))');
```

```
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->from('C')
    ->where('C.col1 NOT IN (FROM C2(col1))');
```

## Subqueries

A subquery can contain any of the keywords or clauses that an ordinary SELECT query can contain.

Some advantages of the subqueries:

- They allow queries that are structured so that it is possible to isolate each part of a statement.

- They provide alternative ways to perform operations that would otherwise require complex joins and unions.
- They are, in many people's opinion, readable. Indeed, it was the innovation of subqueries that gave people the original idea of calling the early SQL "Structured Query Language."

Here is an example where we find all users which don't belong to the group id 1:

*Listing  
9-102*

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('u.id')
    ->from('User u')
    ->where('u.id NOT IN (SELECT u2.id FROM User u2 INNER JOIN u2.Groups g WHERE
g.id = ?)', 1);

echo $q->getSql();
```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

*Listing  
9-103*

```
SELECT
u.id AS u__id
FROM user u
WHERE u.id NOT IN (SELECT
u2.id AS u2__id
FROM user u2
INNER JOIN user_group u3 ON u2.id = u3.user_id
INNER JOIN groups g ON g.id = u3.group_id
WHERE g.id = ?)
```

Here is an example where we find all users which don't belong to any groups

*Listing  
9-104*

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('u.id')
    ->from('User u')
    ->where('u.id NOT IN (SELECT u2.id FROM User u2 INNER JOIN u2.Groups g)');

echo $q->getSql();
```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

*Listing  
9-105*

```
SELECT
u.id AS u__id
FROM user u
WHERE u.id NOT IN (SELECT
u2.id AS u2__id
FROM user u2
```

```
INNER JOIN user_group u3 ON u2.id = u3.user_id
INNER JOIN groups g ON g.id = u3.group_id)
```

## Functional Expressions

### String functions

The *CONCAT* function returns a string that is a concatenation of its arguments. In the example above we map the concatenation of users `first_name` and `last_name` to a value called `name`

Listing  
9-106

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('CONCAT(u.first_name, u.last_name) AS name')
    ->from('User u');

echo $q->getSql();
```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

Listing  
9-107

```
SELECT
u.id AS u__id,
CONCAT(u.first_name,
u.last_name) AS u__0
FROM user u
```

Now we can execute the query and get the mapped function value:

Listing  
9-108

```
$users = $q->execute();

foreach($users as $user) {
    // here 'name' is not a property of $user,
    // its a mapped function value
    echo $user->name;
}
```

The second and third arguments of the *SUBSTRING* function denote the starting position and length of the substring to be returned. These arguments are integers. The first position of a string is denoted by 1. The *SUBSTRING* function returns a string.

Listing  
9-109

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create();
    ->select('u.username')
    ->from('User u')
```

```
->where("SUBSTRING(u.username, 0, 1) = 'z'");

echo $q->getSql();
```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

```
SELECT
u.id AS u__id,
u.username AS u__username
FROM user u
WHERE SUBSTRING(u.username
FROM 0 FOR 1) = 'z'
```

Listing  
9-110



Notice how the SQL is generated with the proper `SUBSTRING` syntax for the DBMS you are using!

---

The `TRIM` function trims the specified character from a string. If the character to be trimmed is not specified, it is assumed to be space (or blank). The optional `trim_character` is a single-character string literal or a character-valued input parameter (i.e., `char` or `Character`)[30]. If a trim specification is not provided, `BOTH` is assumed. The `TRIM` function returns the trimmed string.

Listing  
9-111

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('u.username')
    ->from('User u')
    ->where('TRIM(u.username) = ?', 'Someone');

echo $q->getSql();
```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

```
SELECT
u.id AS u__id,
u.username AS u__username
FROM user u
WHERE TRIM(u.username) = ?
```

Listing  
9-112

The `LOWER` and `UPPER` functions convert a string to lower and upper case, respectively. They return a string.

Listing  
9-113

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create();
    ->select('u.username')
    ->from('User u')
    ->where("LOWER(u.username) = 'jon wage'");
```

```
echo $q->getSql();
```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

*Listing 9-114*

```
SELECT
u.id AS u__id,
u.username AS u__username
FROM user u
WHERE LOWER(u.username) = 'someone'
```

The *LOCATE* function returns the position of a given string within a string, starting the search at a specified position. It returns the first position at which the string was found as an integer. The first argument is the string to be located; the second argument is the string to be searched; the optional third argument is an integer that represents the string position at which the search is started (by default, the beginning of the string to be searched). The first position in a string is denoted by 1. If the string is not found, 0 is returned.

The *LENGTH* function returns the length of the string in characters as an integer.

## Arithmetic functions

Available DQL arithmetic functions:

*Listing 9-115*

```
ABS(simple_arithmetic_expression)
SQRT(simple_arithmetic_expression)
MOD(simple_arithmetic_expression, simple_arithmetic_expression)
```

- The *ABS* function returns the absolute value for given number.
- The *SQRT* function returns the square root for given number.
- The *MOD* function returns the modulus of first argument using the second argument.

## Subqueries

### Introduction

Doctrine allows you to use sub-dql queries in the *FROM*, *SELECT* and *WHERE* statements. Below you will find examples for all the different types of subqueries Doctrine supports.

### Comparisons using subqueries

Find all the users which are not in a specific group.

*Listing 9-116*

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('u.id')
    ->from('User u')
    ->where('u.id NOT IN (SELECT u.id FROM User u INNER JOIN u.Groups g WHERE g.id = ?)', 1);
```



```
echo $q->getSql();
```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

```
SELECT
u.id AS u__id
FROM user u
WHERE u.id NOT IN (SELECT
u2.id AS u2__id
FROM user u2
INNER JOIN user_group u3 ON u2.id = u3.user_id
INNER JOIN groups g ON g.id = u3.group_id
WHERE g.id = ?)
```

*Listing  
9-117*

Retrieve the users phonenummer in a subquery and include it in the resultset of user information.

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('u.id')
    ->addSelect('(SELECT p.phonenummer FROM Phonenummer p WHERE p.user_id = u.id
LIMIT 1) as phonenummer')
    ->from('User u');

echo $q->getSql();
```

*Listing  
9-118*

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

```
SELECT
u.id AS u__id,
(SELECT
p.phonenummer AS p__phonenummer
FROM phonenummer p
WHERE p.user_id = u.id
LIMIT 1) AS u__0
FROM user u
```

*Listing  
9-119*

## GROUP BY, HAVING clauses

DQL GROUP BY syntax:

```
GROUP BY groupby_item {,
groupby_item}*
```

*Listing  
9-120*

DQL HAVING syntax:

```
HAVING conditional_expression
```

*Listing  
9-121*

**GROUP BY** and **HAVING** clauses can be used for dealing with aggregate functions. The Following aggregate functions are available on DQL: **COUNT**, **MAX**, **MIN**, **AVG**, **SUM**

Selecting alphabetically first user by name.

Listing  
9-122

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('MIN(a.amount)')
    ->from('Account a');

echo $q->getSql();
```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

Listing  
9-123

```
SELECT
MIN(a.amount) AS a__0
FROM account a
```

Selecting the sum of all Account amounts.

Listing  
9-124

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('SUM(a.amount)')
    ->from('Account a');

echo $q->getSql();
```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

Listing  
9-125

```
SELECT
SUM(a.amount) AS a__0
FROM account a
```

Using an aggregate function in a statement containing no **GROUP BY** clause, results in grouping on all rows. In the example below we fetch all users and the number of phonenumbers they have.

Listing  
9-126

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('u.username')
    ->addSelect('COUNT(p.id) as num_phonenumbers')
    ->from('User u')
    ->leftJoin('u.Phonenumbers p')
    ->groupBy('u.id');
```

```
echo $q->getSql();
```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

```
SELECT
u.id AS u__id,
u.username AS u__username,
COUNT(p.id) AS p__0
FROM user u
LEFT JOIN phonenumber p ON u.id = p.user_id
GROUP BY u.id
```

*Listing  
9-127*

The HAVING clause can be used for narrowing the results using aggregate values. In the following example we fetch all users which have atleast 2 phonenumber

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('u.username')
    ->addSelect('COUNT(p.id) as num_phonenumbers')
    ->from('User u')
    ->leftJoin('u.Phonenumbers p')
    ->groupBy('u.id')
    ->having('num_phonenumbers >= 2');

echo $q->getSql();
```

*Listing  
9-128*

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

```
SELECT
u.id AS u__id,
u.username AS u__username,
COUNT(p.id) AS p__0
FROM user u
LEFT JOIN phonenumber p ON u.id = p.user_id
GROUP BY u.id
HAVING p__0 >= 2
```

*Listing  
9-129*

You can access the number of phonenumber with the following code:

```
// test.php

// ...
$users = $q->execute();

foreach($users as $user) {
    echo $user->name . ' has ' . $user->num_phonenumbers . ' phonenumber';
}
```

*Listing  
9-130*

# ORDER BY clause

## Introduction

Record collections can be sorted efficiently at the database level using the ORDER BY clause.

Syntax:

```
, ...]
```

Examples:

*Listing  
9-131*

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('u.username')
    ->from('User u')
    ->leftJoin('u.Phonenumbers p')
    ->orderBy('u.username, p.phonenumber');

echo $q->getSql();
```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

*Listing  
9-132*

```
SELECT
u.id AS u__id,
u.username AS u__username
FROM user u
LEFT JOIN phonenumber p ON u.id = p.user_id
ORDER BY u.username,
p.phonenumber
```

In order to sort in reverse order you can add the DESC (descending) keyword to the name of the column in the ORDER BY clause that you are sorting by. The default is ascending order; this can be specified explicitly using the ASC keyword.

*Listing  
9-133*

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('u.username')
    ->from('User u')
    ->leftJoin('u.Email e')
    ->orderBy('e.address DESC, u.id ASC');

echo $q->getSql();
```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

*Listing  
9-134*

```

SELECT
u.id AS u__id,
u.username AS u__username
FROM user u
LEFT JOIN email e ON u.id = e.user_id
ORDER BY e.address DESC,
u.id ASC

```

## Sorting by an aggregate value

In the following example we fetch all users and sort those users by the number of phonenumbers they have.

*Listing  
9-135*

```

// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('u.username, COUNT(p.id) count')
    ->from('User u')
    ->innerJoin('u.Phonenumbers p')
    ->orderBy('count');

echo $q->getSql();

```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

*Listing  
9-136*

```

SELECT
u.id AS u__id,
u.username AS u__username,
COUNT(p.id) AS p__0
FROM user u
INNER JOIN phonenum p ON u.id = p.user_id
ORDER BY p__0

```

## Using random order

In the following example we use `random` in the `ORDER BY` clause in order to fetch random post.

*Listing  
9-137*

```

// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('t.id, RANDOM() AS rand')
    ->from('Forum_Thread t')
    ->orderBy('rand')
    ->limit(1);

echo $q->getSql();

```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

*Listing 9-138*

```
SELECT
f.id AS f__id,
RAND() AS f__0
FROM forum__thread f
ORDER BY f__0
LIMIT 1
```

## LIMIT and OFFSET clauses

Probably the most complex feature DQL parser has to offer is its LIMIT clause parser. Not only does the DQL LIMIT clause parser take care of LIMIT database portability it is capable of limiting the number of records instead of rows by using complex query analysis and subqueries.

Retrieve the first 20 users and all their associated phonenumbers:

*Listing 9-139*

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('u.username, p.phonenumber')
    ->from('User u')
    ->leftJoin('u.Phonenumbers p')
    ->limit(20);

echo $q->getSql();
```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

*Listing 9-140*

```
SELECT
u.id AS u__id,
u.username AS u__username,
p.id AS p__id,
p.phonenumber AS p__phonenumber
FROM user u
LEFT JOIN phonenum p ON u.id = p.user_id
```

## Driver Portability

DQL LIMIT clause is portable on all supported databases. Special attention have been paid to following facts:

- Only Mysql, Pgsq and SqLite implement LIMIT / OFFSET clauses natively
- In Oracle / Mssql / Firebird LIMIT / OFFSET clauses need to be emulated in driver specific way
- The limit-subquery-algorithm needs to execute to subquery separately in mysql, since mysql doesn't yet support LIMIT clause in subqueries
- Pgsq needs the order by fields to be preserved in SELECT clause, hence limit-subquery-algorithm needs to take this into consideration when pgsq driver is used
- Oracle only allows < 30 object identifiers (= table/column names/aliases), hence the limit subquery must use as short aliases as possible and it must avoid alias collisions with the main query.

## The limit-subquery-algorithm

The limit-subquery-algorithm is an algorithm that DQL parser uses internally when one-to-many / many-to-many relational data is being fetched simultaneously. This kind of special algorithm is needed for the LIMIT clause to limit the number of records instead of sql result set rows.

This behavior can be overwritten using the configuration system (at global, connection or table level) using:

```
$table->setAttribute(Doctrine::ATTR_QUERY_LIMIT, Doctrine::LIMIT_ROWS);
$table->setAttribute(Doctrine::ATTR_QUERY_LIMIT, Doctrine::LIMIT_RECORDS); //
revert
```

*Listing  
9-141*

In the following example we have users and phonenumbers with their relation being one-to-many. Now lets say we want fetch the first 20 users and all their related phonenumbers.

Now one might consider that adding a simple driver specific LIMIT 20 at the end of query would return the correct results. Thats wrong, since we you might get anything between 1-20 users as the first user might have 20 phonenumbers and then record set would consist of 20 rows.

DQL overcomes this problem with subqueries and with complex but efficient subquery analysis. In the next example we are going to fetch first 20 users and all their phonenumbers with single efficient query. Notice how the DQL parser is smart enough to use column aggregation inheritance even in the subquery and how it's smart enough to use different aliases for the tables in the subquery to avoid alias collisions.

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('u.id, u.username, p.*')
    ->from('User u')
    ->leftJoin('u.Phonenumbers p')
    ->limit(20);

echo $q->getSql();
```

*Listing  
9-142*

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

```
SELECT
u.id AS u__id,
u.username AS u__username,
p.id AS p__id,
p.user_id AS p__user_id,
p.phonenumber AS p__phonenumber
FROM user u
LEFT JOIN phonenumber p ON u.id = p.user_id
```

*Listing  
9-143*

In the next example we are going to fetch first 20 users and all their phonenumbers and only those users that actually have phonenumbers with single efficient query, hence we use an

INNER JOIN. Notice how the DQL parser is smart enough to use the INNER JOIN in the subquery:

Listing  
9-144

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('u.id, u.username, p.*')
    ->from('User u')
    ->innerJoin('u.Phonenumbers p')
    ->limit(20);

echo $q->getSql();
```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

Listing  
9-145

```
SELECT
u.id AS u__id,
u.username AS u__username,
p.id AS p__id,
p.user_id AS p__user_id,
p.phonenumber AS p__phonenumber
FROM user u
INNER JOIN phonenumber p ON u.id = p.user_id
```

## Named Queries

When you are dealing with a model that may change, but you need to keep your queries easily updated, you need to find an easy way to define queries. Imagine for example that you change one field and you need to follow all queries in your application to make sure it'll not break anything.

Named Queries is a nice and effective way to solve this situation, allowing you to create `Doctrine_Queries` and reuse them without the need to keep rewriting them.

The Named Query support is built at the top of `Doctrine_Query_Registry` support. `Doctrine_Query_Registry` is a class for registering and naming queries. It helps with the organization of your applications queries and along with that it offers some very nice convenience stuff.

The queries are added using the `add()` method of the registry object. It takes two parameters, the query name and the actual DQL query.

Listing  
9-146

```
// test.php

// ...
$r = Doctrine_Manager::getInstance()->getQueryRegistry();

$r->add('User/all', 'FROM User u');

$userTable = Doctrine::getTable('User');

// find all users
$users = $userTable->find('all');
```



To simplify this support, `Doctrine_Table` support some accessors to `Doctrine_Query_Registry`.

## Creating a Named Query

When you build your models with option `generateTableClasses` defined as true, each record class will also generate a `*Table` class, extending from `Doctrine_Table`.

Then, you can implement the method `construct()` to include your Named Queries:

*Listing  
9-147*

```
class UserTable extends Doctrine_Table
{
    public function construct()
    {
        // Named Query defined using DQL string
        $this->addNamedQuery('get.by.id', 'SELECT u.username FROM User u WHERE
u.id = ?');

        // Named Query defined using Doctrine_Query object
        $this->addNamedQuery(
            'get.by.similar.usernames', Doctrine_Query::create()
                ->select('u.id, u.username')
                ->from('User u')
                ->where('LOWER(u.username) LIKE LOWER(?)')
        );
    }
}
```

## Accessing Named Query

To reach the `MyFooTable` class, which is a subclass of `Doctrine_Table`, you can do the following:

*Listing  
9-148*

```
$userTable = Doctrine::getTable('User');
```

To access the Named Query (will return you a `Doctrine_Query` instance, always):

*Listing  
9-149*

```
$q = $userTable->createNamedQuery('get.by.id');
echo $q->getSql();
```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

```
SELECT
u.id AS u__id,
u.username AS u__username
```

*Listing  
9-150*

```
FROM user u
WHERE u.id = ?
```

## Executing a Named Query

There are two ways to execute a Named Query. The first one is by retrieving the `Doctrine_Query` and then executing it normally, as a normal instance:

Listing  
9-151

```
// test.php

// ...
$users = Doctrine::getTable('User')
    ->createNamedQuery('get.by.similar.usernames')
    ->execute(array('%jon%wage%'));
```

You can also simplify the execution, by doing:

Listing  
9-152

```
// test.php

// ...
$users = Doctrine::getTable('User')
    ->find('get.by.similar.usernames', array('%jon%wage%'));
```

The method `find()` also accepts a third parameter, which is the hydration mode.

## Cross-Accessing Named Query

If that's not enough, Doctrine take advantage the `Doctrine_Query_Registry` and uses namespace queries to enable cross-access of Named Queries between objects. Suppose you have the `*Table` class instance of record `Article`. You want to call the "get.by.id" Named Query of record `User`. To access the Named Query, you have to do:

Listing  
9-153

```
// test.php

// ...
$articleTable = Doctrine::getTable('Article');

$users = $articleTable->find('User/get.by.id', array(1, 2, 3));
```

## BNF

Listing  
9-154

```
QL_statement ::= select_statement | update_statement | delete_statement
select_statement ::= select_clause from_clause [where_clause]
                  [groupby_clause]
                  [having_clause] [orderby_clause]
update_statement ::= update_clause [where_clause]
```

```

delete_statement ::= delete_clause [where_clause]
from_clause ::=
FROM identification_variable_declaration
{, {identification_variable_declaration | collection_member_declaration}}*
identification_variable_declaration ::= range_variable_declaration { join
| fetch_join }*
range_variable_declaration ::= abstract_schema_name [AS ]
identification_variable
join ::= join_spec join_association_path_expression [AS ]
identification_variable
fetch_join ::= join_spec FETCH join_association_path_expression
association_path_expression ::=
collection_valued_path_expression |
single_valued_association_path_expression
join_spec ::= [LEFT [OUTER ] | INNER ] JOIN
join_association_path_expression ::=
join_collection_valued_path_expression |
join_single_valued_association_path_expression
join_collection_valued_path_expression ::=
identification_variable.collection_valued_association_field
join_single_valued_association_path_expression ::=
identification_variable.single_valued_association_field
collection_member_declaration ::=
IN ( collection_valued_path_expression) [AS ] identification_variable
single_valued_path_expression ::=
state_field_path_expression | single_valued_association_path_expression
state_field_path_expression ::=
{identification_variable |
single_valued_association_path_expression}.state_field
single_valued_association_path_expression ::=
identification_variable.{single_valued_association_field.}*
single_valued_association_field
collection_valued_path_expression ::=
identification_variable.{single_valued_association_field.}*collection_valued_association
state_field ::= {embedded_class_state_field.}*simple_state_field
update_clause ::= UPDATE abstract_schema_name [[AS ]
identification_variable]
SET update_item {, update_item}*
update_item ::= [identification_variable.]{state_field |
single_valued_association_field} =
new_value
new_value ::=
simple_arithmetic_expression |
string_primary |
datetime_primary |

boolean_primary |
enum_primary
simple_entity_expression |
NULL
delete_clause ::= DELETE FROM abstract_schema_name [[AS ]
identification_variable]
select_clause ::= SELECT [DISTINCT ] select_expression {,
select_expression}*
select_expression ::=
single_valued_path_expression |
aggregate_expression |
identification_variable |

```

```

OBJECT( identification_variable) |
constructor_expression
constructor_expression ::=
NEW constructor_name( constructor_item {, constructor_item}*)
constructor_item ::= single_valued_path_expression | aggregate_expression
aggregate_expression ::=
{AVG |MAX |MIN |SUM }( [DISTINCT ] state_field_path_expression) |
COUNT ( [DISTINCT ] identification_variable | state_field_path_expression |
single_valued_association_path_expression)
where_clause ::=WHERE conditional_expression
groupby_clause ::=GROUP BY groupby_item {, groupby_item}*
groupby_item ::= single_valued_path_expression | identification_variable
having_clause ::=HAVING conditional_expression
orderby_clause ::=ORDER BY orderby_item {, orderby_item}*
orderby_item ::= state_field_path_expression [ASC |DESC ]
subquery ::= simple_select_clause subquery_from_clause [where_clause]
[groupby_clause] [having_clause]
subquery_from_clause ::=
FROM subselect_identification_variable_declaration
{, subselect_identification_variable_declaration}*
subselect_identification_variable_declaration ::=
identification_variable_declaration |
association_path_expression [AS ] identification_variable |
collection_member_declaration
simple_select_clause ::=SELECT [DISTINCT ] simple_select_expression
simple_select_expression::=
single_valued_path_expression |
aggregate_expression |
identification_variable
conditional_expression ::= conditional_term | conditional_expressionOR
conditional_term
conditional_term ::= conditional_factor | conditional_termAND
conditional_factor
conditional_factor ::= [NOT ] conditional_primary
conditional_primary ::= simple_cond_expression |( conditional_expression)
simple_cond_expression ::=
comparison_expression |
between_expression |
like_expression |
in_expression |
null_comparison_expression |
empty_collection_comparison_expression |

collection_member_expression |
exists_expression
between_expression ::=
arithmetic_expression [NOT ]BETWEEN
arithmetic_expressionAND arithmetic_expression |
string_expression [NOT ]BETWEEN string_expressionAND string_expression |
datetime_expression [NOT ]BETWEEN
datetime_expressionAND datetime_expression
in_expression ::=
state_field_path_expression [NOT ]IN ( in_item {, in_item}* | subquery)
in_item ::= literal | input_parameter
like_expression ::=
string_expression [NOT ]LIKE pattern_value [ESCAPE escape_character]
null_comparison_expression ::=
{single_valued_path_expression | input_parameter}IS [NOT ] NULL

```

```

empty_collection_comparison_expression ::=
collection_valued_path_expression IS [NOT] EMPTY
collection_member_expression ::= entity_expression
[NOT ] MEMBER [OF ] collection_valued_path_expression
exists_expression ::= [NOT ] EXISTS (subquery)
all_or_any_expression ::= {ALL | ANY | SOME } (subquery)
comparison_expression ::=
string_expression comparison_operator {string_expression |
all_or_any_expression} |
boolean_expression {= | <> } {boolean_expression | all_or_any_expression} |
enum_expression {= | <> } {enum_expression | all_or_any_expression} |
datetime_expression comparison_operator
{datetime_expression | all_or_any_expression} |
entity_expression {= | <> } {entity_expression | all_or_any_expression} |
arithmetic_expression comparison_operator
{arithmetic_expression | all_or_any_expression}
comparison_operator ::= > | >= | < | <= | <>
arithmetic_expression ::= simple_arithmetic_expression | (subquery)
simple_arithmetic_expression ::=
arithmetic_term | simple_arithmetic_expression {+ | - } arithmetic_term
arithmetic_term ::= arithmetic_factor | arithmetic_term {* | / }
arithmetic_factor
arithmetic_factor ::= [{+ | - }] arithmetic_primary
arithmetic_primary ::=
state_field_path_expression |
numeric_literal |
(simple_arithmetic_expression) |
input_parameter |
functions_returning_numerics |
aggregate_expression
string_expression ::= string_primary | (subquery)
string_primary ::=
state_field_path_expression |
string_literal |
input_parameter |
functions_returning_strings |
aggregate_expression

datetime_expression ::= datetime_primary | (subquery)
datetime_primary ::=
state_field_path_expression |
input_parameter |
functions_returning_datetime |
aggregate_expression
boolean_expression ::= boolean_primary | (subquery)
boolean_primary ::=
state_field_path_expression |
boolean_literal |
input_parameter |
enum_expression ::= enum_primary | (subquery)
enum_primary ::=
state_field_path_expression |
enum_literal |
input_parameter |
entity_expression ::=
single_valued_association_path_expression | simple_entity_expression
simple_entity_expression ::=
identification_variable |

```

```

input_parameter
functions_returning_numerics ::=
LENGTH( string_primary ) |
LOCATE( string_primary, string_primary[, simple_arithmetic_expression] ) |
ABS( simple_arithmetic_expression ) |
SQRT( simple_arithmetic_expression ) |
MOD( simple_arithmetic_expression, simple_arithmetic_expression ) |
SIZE( collection_valued_path_expression )
functions_returning_datetime ::=
CURRENT_DATE |
CURRENT_TIME |
CURRENT_TIMESTAMP
functions_returning_strings ::=
CONCAT( string_primary, string_primary ) |
SUBSTRING( string_primary,
simple_arithmetic_expression, simple_arithmetic_expression ) |
TRIM( [[trim_specification] [trim_character]FROM ] string_primary ) |
LOWER( string_primary ) |
UPPER( string_primary )
trim_specification ::= LEADING | TRAILING | BOTH

```

## Magic Finders

Doctrine offers some magic finders for your Doctrine models that allow you to find a record by any column that is present in the model. This is helpful for simply finding a user by their username, or finding a group by the name of it. Normally this would require writing a Doctrine\_Query instance and storing this somewhere so it can be reused. That is no longer needed for simple situations like that.

The basic pattern for the finder methods are as follows: `findBy%s($value)` or `findOneBy%s($value)`. The `%s` can be a column name or a relation alias. If you give a column name you must give the value you are looking for. If you specify a relationship alias, you can either pass an instance of the relation class to find, or give the actual primary key value.

First lets retrieve the `UserTable` instance to work with:

*Listing  
9-155*

```

// test.php

// ...
$userTable = Doctrine::getTable('User');

```

Now we can easily find a `User` record by its primary key by using the `find()` method:

*Listing  
9-156*

```

// test.php

// ...
$user = $userTable->find(1);

```

Now if you want to find a single user by their username you can use the following magic finder:

Listing  
9-157

```
// test.php

// ...
$user = $userTable->findOneByUsername('jonwage');
```

You can also easily by records by using the relationships between records. Because `User` has many `Phonenumbers` we can find those `Phonenumbers` by passing the `findBy**()` method a `User` instance:

Listing  
9-158

```
// test.php

// ...
$phonenumbertable = Doctrine::getTable('Phonenumber');

$phonenumbers = $phonenumbertable->findByUser($user);
```



The documented magic finders above are made possibly by using PHP's `__call()`<sup>52</sup> overloading functionality. The undefined functions are forwarded to `Doctrine_Table::__call()` where the `Doctrine_Query` objects are built, executed and returned to the user.

## Debugging Queries

The `Doctrine_Query` object has a few functions that can be used to help debug problems with the query:

Sometimes you may want to see the complete DQL string of your `Doctrine_Query` object:

Listing  
9-159

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('u.id')
    ->from('User u')
    ->orderBy('u.username');

echo $q->getSql();
```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

```
SELECT
u.id AS u__id
FROM user u
ORDER BY u.username
```

Listing  
9-160

52. [http://us3.php.net/\\_\\_call](http://us3.php.net/__call)



The SQL returned above by the `Doctrine_Query::getSql()` function does not replace the tokens with the parameters. This is the job of PDO and when we execute the query we pass the parameters to PDO where the replacement is executed. You can retrieve the array of parameters with the `Doctrine_Query::getParams()` method.

---

Get the array of parameters for the `Doctrine_Query` instance:

*Listing  
9-161*

```
// test.php

// ...
print_r53($q->getParams());
```

## Conclusion

The Doctrine Query Language is by far one of the most advanced and helpful feature of Doctrine. It allows you to easily select very complex data from RDBMS relationships efficiently!

Now that we have gone over most of the major components of Doctrine and how to use them we are going to take a step back in the next chapter and look at everything from a birds eye view in the Component Overview chapter.

---

53. [http://www.php.net/function.print\\_r](http://www.php.net/function.print_r)



## Chapter 10

# Component Overview

This chapter is intended to give you a birds eye view of all the main components that make up Doctrine and how they work together. We've discussed most of the components in the previous chapters but after this chapter you will have a better idea of all the components and what their jobs are.

## Manager

The `Doctrine_Manager` class is a singleton and is the root of the configuration hierarchy and is used as a facade for controlling several aspects of Doctrine. You can retrieve the singleton instance with the following code.

```
// test.php

// ...
$manager = Doctrine_Manager::getInstance();
```

*Listing  
10-1*

## Retrieving Connections

```
// test.php

// ...
$connections = $manager->getConnections();
foreach ($connections as $connection) {
    echo $connection->getName() . "\n";
}
```

*Listing  
10-2*

The `Doctrine_Manager` implements an iterator so you can simple loop over the `$manager` variable to loop over the connections.

```
// test.php

// ...
foreach ($manager as $connection) {
```

*Listing  
10-3*

```
        echo $connection->getName() . "\n";  
    }
```

## Connection

`Doctrine_Connection` is a wrapper for database connection. The connection is typically an instance of PDO but because of how Doctrine is designed, it is possible to design your own adapters that mimic the functionality that PDO provides.

The `Doctrine_Connection` class handles several things:

- Handles database portability things missing from PDO (eg. LIMIT / OFFSET emulation)
- Keeps track of `Doctrine_Table` objects
- Keeps track of records
- Keeps track of records that need to be updated / inserted / deleted
- Handles transactions and transaction nesting
- Handles the actual querying of the database in the case of INSERT / UPDATE / DELETE operations
- Can query the database using DQL. You will learn more about DQL in the DQL (Doctrine Query Language) chapter.
- Optionally validates transactions using `Doctrine_Validator` and gives full information of possible errors.

## Available Drivers

Doctrine has drivers for every PDO-supported database. The supported databases are:

- FreeTDS / Microsoft SQL Server / Sybase
- Firebird/Interbase 6
- Informix
- Mysql
- Oracle
- Odbc
- PostgreSQL
- Sqlite

## Creating Connections

*Listing  
10-4*

```
// bootstrap.php  
  
// ...  
$conn = Doctrine_Manager::connection('mysql://username:password@localhost/test',  
    'connection 1');
```



We have already created a new connection in the previous chapters. You can skip the above step and use the connection we've already created. You can retrieve it by using the `Doctrine_Manager::connection()` method.

---

## Flushing the Connection

When you create new `User` records you can flush the connection and save all un-saved objects for that connection. Below is an example:

*Listing  
10-5*

```
// test.php

// ...
$conn = Doctrine_Manager::connection();

$user1 = new User();
$user1->username = 'Jack';

$user2 = new User();
$user2->username = 'jwage';

$conn->flush54();
```

Calling `Doctrine_Connection::flush()` will save all unsaved record instances for that connection. You could of course optionally call `save()` on each record instance and it would be the same thing.

*Listing  
10-6*

```
// test.php

// ...
$user1->save();
$user2->save();
```

## Table

`Doctrine_Table` holds the schema information specified by the given component (record). For example if you have a `User` class that extends `Doctrine_Record`, each schema definition call gets delegated to a unique table object that holds the information for later use.

Each `Doctrine_Table` is registered by `Doctrine_Connection`. You can retrieve the table object for each component easily which is demonstrated right below.

For example, lets say we want to retrieve the table object for the `User` class. We can do this by simply giving `User` as the first argument for the `Doctrine::getTable()` method.

## Getting a Table Object

In order to get table object for specified record just call `Doctrine_Record::getTable()`.

*Listing  
10-7*

```
// test.php

// ...
$accountTable = Doctrine::getTable('Account');
```

---

54. <http://www.php.net/function.flush>

## Getting Column Information

You can retrieve the column definitions set in `Doctrine_Record` by using the appropriate `Doctrine_Table` methods. If you need all information of all columns you can simply use:

Listing  
10-8

```
// test.php

// ...
$columns = $accountTable->getColumns();

$columns = $accountTable->getColumns();
foreach ($columns as $column)
{
    print_r55($column);
}
```

The above example would output the following when executed:

Listing  
10-9

```
$ php test.php
Array
(
    [type] => integer
    [length] => 20
    [autoincrement] => 1
    [primary] => 1
)
Array
(
    [type] => string
    [length] => 255
)
Array
(
    [type] => decimal
    [length] => 18
)
```

Sometimes this can be an overkill. The following example shows how to retrieve the column names as an array:

Listing  
10-10

```
// test.php

// ...
$names = $accountTable->getColumnNames();
print_r56($names);
```

---

55. [http://www.php.net/function.print\\_r](http://www.php.net/function.print_r)  
56. [http://www.php.net/function.print\\_r](http://www.php.net/function.print_r)

The above example would output the following when executed:

```
$ php test.php
Array
(
    [0] => id
    [1] => name
    [2] => amount
)
```

*Listing  
10-11*

## Getting Relation Information

You can also get an array of all the `Doctrine_Relation` objects by simply calling `Doctrine_Table::getRelations()` like the following:

```
// test.php

// ...
$userTable = Doctrine::getTable('User');

$relations = $userTable->getRelations();

foreach ($relations as $name => $relation) {
    echo $name . ":\n";
    echo "Local - " . $relation->getLocal() . "\n";
    echo "Foreign - " . $relation->getForeign() . "\n\n";
}
```

*Listing  
10-12*

The above example would output the following when executed:

```
$ php test.php
Email:
Local - id
Foreign - user_id

Phonenumbers:
Local - id
Foreign - user_id

Groups:
Local - user_id
Foreign - group_id

Friends:
Local - user1
Foreign - user2

Addresses:
Local - id
Foreign - user_id

Threads:
Local - id
Foreign - user_id
```

*Listing  
10-13*

You can get the `Doctrine_Relation` object for an individual relationship by using the `Doctrine_Table::getRelation()` method.

Listing  
10-14

```
// test.php

// ...
$relation = $userTable->getRelation('Phonenumbers');

echo 'Name: ' . $relation['alias'] . "\n";
echo 'Local - ' . $relation['local'] . "\n";
echo 'Foreign - ' . $relation['foreign'] . "\n";
echo 'Relation Class - ' . get_class57($relation);
```

The above example would output the following when executed:

Listing  
10-15

```
$ php test.php
Name: Phonenumbers
Local - id
Foreign - user_id
Relation Class - Doctrine_Relation_ForeignKey
```



Notice how in the above examples the `$relation` variable holds an instance of `Doctrine_Relation_ForeignKey` yet we can access it like an array. This is because, like many Doctrine classes, it implements `ArrayAccess`.

---

You can debug all the information of a relationship by using the `toArray()` method and using `print_r()` to inspect it.

Listing  
10-16

```
// test.php

// ...
$array = $relation->toArray();
print_r58($array);
```

## Finder Methods

`Doctrine_Table` provides basic finder methods. These finder methods are very fast to write and should be used if you only need to fetch data from one database table. If you need queries that use several components (database tables) use `Doctrine_Connection::query()`.

You can easily find an individual user by its primary key by using the `find()` method:

Listing  
10-17

```
// test.php

// ...
$user = $userTable->find(2);
print_r59($user->toArray());
```

---

57. [http://www.php.net/function.get\\_class](http://www.php.net/function.get_class)

58. [http://www.php.net/function.print\\_r](http://www.php.net/function.print_r)

The above example would output the following when executed:

```
$ php test.php
Array
(
    [id] => 2
    [is_active] => 1
    [is_super_admin] => 0
    [first_name] =>
    [last_name] =>
    [username] => jwage
    [password] =>
    [type] =>
    [created_at] => 2009-01-21 13:29:12
    [updated_at] => 2009-01-21 13:29:12
)
```

*Listing  
10-18*

You can also use the `findAll()` method to retrieve a collection of all `User` records in the database:

```
// test.php

// ...
foreach ($userTable->findAll() as $user) {
    echo $user->username . "\n";
}
```

*Listing  
10-19*

The above example would output the following when executed:

```
$ php test.php
Jack
jwage
```

*Listing  
10-20*



The `findAll()` method is not recommended as it will return all records in the database and if you need to retrieve information from relationships it will lazily load that data causing high query counts. You can learn how to retrieve records and their related records efficiently by reading the DQL (Doctrine Query Language) chapter.

You can also retrieve a set of records with a DQL where condition by using the `findByDql()` method:

```
// test.php

// ...
$users = $userTable->findByDql('username LIKE ?', '%jw%');

foreach($users as $user) {
    echo $user->username . "\n";
}
```

*Listing  
10-21*

---

59. [http://www.php.net/function.print\\_r](http://www.php.net/function.print_r)

```
}
```

The above example would output the following when executed:

*Listing 10-22*

```
$ php test.php
jwage
```

Doctrine also offers some additional magic finder methods that can be read about in the Magic Finders section of the DQL chapter.



All of the finders below provided by `Doctrine_Table` use instances of `Doctrine_Query` for executing the queries. The objects are built dynamically internally and executed.

---

## Custom Table Classes

Adding custom table classes is very easy. Only thing you need to do is name the classes as `[componentName]Table` and make them extend `Doctrine_Table`. So for the `User` model we would create a class like the following:

*Listing 10-23*

```
// models/UserTable.php

class UserTable extends Doctrine_Table
{
}
```

## Custom Finders

You can add custom finder methods to your custom table object. These finder methods may use fast `Doctrine_Table` finder methods or DQL API (`Doctrine_Query::create()`).

*Listing 10-24*

```
// models/UserTable.php

class UserTable extends Doctrine_Table
{
    public function findByName($name)
    {
        return Doctrine_Query::create()
            ->from('User u')
            ->where('u.name LIKE ?', "%$name%")
            ->execute();
    }
}
```

Doctrine will check if a child `Doctrine_Table` class called `UserTable` exists when calling `getTable()` and if it does, it will return an instance of that instead of the default `Doctrine_Table`.





In order for custom `Doctrine_Table` classes to be loaded you must enable the `autoload_table_classes` attribute in your `bootstrap.php` file like done below.

```
// bootstrap.php

// ...
$manager->setAttribute(Doctrine::ATTR_AUTOLOAD_TABLE_CLASSES, true);
```

*Listing  
10-25*

Now when we ask for the `User` table object we will get the following:

```
$userTable = Doctrine::getTable('User');

echo get_class60($userTable); // UserTable

$users = $userTable->findByName("Jack");
```

*Listing  
10-26*



The above example where we add a `findByName()` method is made possible automatically by the magic finder methods. You can read about them in the Magic Finders section of the DQL chapter.

## Record

Doctrine represents tables in your RDBMS with child `Doctrine_Record` classes. These classes are where you define your schema information, options, attributes, etc. Instances of these child classes represents records in the database and you can get and set properties on these objects.

## Properties

Each assigned column property of `Doctrine_Record` represents a database table column. You will learn more about how to define your models in the Defining Models chapter.

Now accessing the columns is easy:

```
// test.php

// ...
$userTable = Doctrine::getTable('User');

$user = $userTable->find(1);
```

*Listing  
10-27*

## Access property through overloading

---

<sup>60</sup>. [http://www.php.net/function.get\\_class](http://www.php.net/function.get_class)

Listing  
10-28

```
// test.php

// ...
echo $user->username;
```

### Access property with get()

Listing  
10-29

```
// test.php

// ...
echo $user->get(username);
```

### Access property with ArrayAccess

Listing  
10-30

```
// test.php

// ...
echo $user['username'];
```



The recommended way to access column values is by using the ArrayAccess as it makes it easy to switch between record and array fetching when needed.

---

Iterating through the properties of a record can be done in similar way as iterating through an array - by using the `foreach` construct. This is possible since `Doctrine_Record` implements a magic `IteratorAggregate` interface.

Listing  
10-31

```
// test.php

// ...
foreach ($user as $field => $value) {
    echo $field . ': ' . $value . "\n";
}
```

As with arrays you can use the `isset()` for checking if given property exists and `unset()` for setting given property to null.

We can easily check if a property named 'name' exists in a if conditional:

Listing  
10-32

```
// test.php

// ...
if (isset($user['username'])) {

}
```

If we want to unset the name property we can do it using the `unset()` function in php:

```
// test.php

// ...
unset($user['username']);
```

*Listing  
10-33*

When you have set values for record properties you can get an array of the modified fields and values using `Doctrine_Record::getModified()`

```
// test.php

// ...
$user['username'] = 'Jack Daniels';

print_r61($user->getModified());
```

*Listing  
10-34*

The above example would output the following when executed:

```
$ php test.php
Array
(
    [username] => Jack Daniels
)
```

*Listing  
10-35*

You can also simply check if a record is modified by using the `Doctrine_Record::isModified()` method:

```
// test.php

// ...
echo $user->isModified() ? 'Modified':'Not Modified';
```

*Listing  
10-36*

Sometimes you may want to retrieve the column count of given record. In order to do this you can simply pass the record as an argument for the `count()` function. This is possible since `Doctrine_Record` implements a magic `Countable` interface. The other way would be calling the `count()` method.

```
// test.php

// ...
echo $record->count62();
```

*Listing  
10-37*

---

61. [http://www.php.net/function.print\\_r](http://www.php.net/function.print_r)  
62. <http://www.php.net/function.count>

```
echo count63($record);
```

`Doctrine_Record` offers a special method for accessing the identifier of given record. This method is called `identifier()` and it returns an array with identifier field names as keys and values as the associated property values.

Listing  
10-38

```
// test.php

// ...
$user['username'] = 'Jack Daniels';
$user->save();

print_r64($user->identifier()); // array('id' => 1)
```

A common case is that you have an array of values which you need to assign to a given record. It may feel awkward and clumsy to set these values separately. No need to worry though, `Doctrine_Record` offers a way for merging a given array or record to another

The `merge()` method iterates through the properties of the given record or array and assigns the values to the object

Listing  
10-39

```
// test.php

// ...
$values = array(
    'username' => 'someone',
    'age' => 11,
);

$user->merge($values);

echo $user->username; // someone
echo $user->age; // 11
```

You can also merge a one records values in to another like the following:

Listing  
10-40

```
// test.php

// ...
$user1 = new User();
$user1->username = 'jwage';

$user2 = new User();
$user2->merge($user1);

echo $user2->username; // jwage
```

---

63. <http://www.php.net/function.count>

64. [http://www.php.net/function.print\\_r](http://www.php.net/function.print_r)



`Doctrine_Record` also has a `fromArray()` method which is identical to `merge()` and only exists for consistency with the `toArray()` method.

---

## Updating Records

Updating objects is very easy, you just call the `Doctrine_Record::save()` method. The other way is to call `Doctrine_Connection::flush()` which saves all objects. It should be noted though that flushing is a much heavier operation than just calling save method.

*Listing  
10-41*

```
// test.php

// ...
$userTable = Doctrine::getTable('User');

$user = $userTable->find(2);

if ($user !== false) {
    $user->username = 'Jack Daniels';

    $user->save();
}
```

Sometimes you may want to do a direct update. In direct update the objects aren't loaded from database, rather the state of the database is directly updated. In the following example we use DQL UPDATE statement to update all users.

Run a query to make all user names lowercase:

*Listing  
10-42*

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->update('User u')
    ->set('u.username', 'LOWER(u.name)');

$q->execute();
```

You can also run an update using objects if you already know the identifier of the record. When you use the `Doctrine_Record::assignIdentifier()` method it sets the record identifier and changes the state so that calling `Doctrine_Record::save()` performs an update instead of insert.

*Listing  
10-43*

```
// test.php

// ...
$user = new User();
```

```
$user->assignIdentifier(1);
$user->username = 'jwage';
$user->save();
```

## Replacing Records

Replacing records is simple. If you instantiate a new object and save it and then later instantiate another new object with the same primary key or unique index value which already exists in the database, then it will replace/update that row in the database instead of inserting a new one. Below is an example.

First, imagine a User model where username is a unique index.

Listing  
10-44

```
// test.php

// ...
$user = new User();
$user->username = 'jwage';
$user->password = 'changeme';
$user->save();
```

Issues the following query

Listing  
10-45

```
INSERT INTO user (username, password) VALUES (?,?) ('jwage', 'changeme')
```

Now let's create another new object and set the same username but a different password.

Listing  
10-46

```
// test.php

// ...
$user = new User();
$user->username = 'jwage';
$user->password = 'newpassword';
$user->replace();
```

Issues the following query

Listing  
10-47

```
REPLACE INTO user (id,username,password) VALUES (?,?,?) (null, 'jwage', 'newpassword')
```

The record is replaced/updated instead of a new one being inserted

## Refreshing Records

Sometimes you may want to refresh your record with data from the database, use `Doctrine_Record::refresh()`.

Listing  
10-48

```
// test.php
```

```
// ...
$user = Doctrine::getTable('User')->find(2);
$user->username = 'New name';
```

Now if you use the `Doctrine_Record::refresh()` method it will select the data from the database again and update the properties of the instance.

*Listing  
10-49*

```
// test.php

// ...
$user->refresh();
```

## Refreshing relationships

The `Doctrine_Record::refresh()` method can also refresh the already loaded record relationships, but you need to specify them on the original query.

First lets retrieve a User with its associated Groups:

*Listing  
10-50*

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->from('User u')
    ->leftJoin('u.Groups')
    ->where('id = ?');

$user = $q->fetchOne(array(1));
```

Now lets retrieve a Group with its associated Users:

*Listing  
10-51*

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->from('Group g')
    ->leftJoin('g.Users')
    ->where('id = ?');

$group = $q->fetchOne(array(1));
```

Now lets link the retrieved User and Group through a UserGroup instance:

*Listing  
10-52*

```
// test.php
```

```
// ...
$userGroup = new UserGroup();
$userGroup->user_id = $user->id;
$userGroup->group_id = $group->id;
$userGroup->save();
```

You can also link a User to a Group in a much simpler way, by simply adding the Group to the User. Doctrine will take care of creating the UserGroup instance for you automatically:

*Listing  
10-53*

```
// test.php

// ...
$user->Groups[] = $group;
$user->save();
```

Now if we call `Doctrine_Record::refresh(true)` it will refresh the record and its relationships loading the newly created reference we made above:

*Listing  
10-54*

```
// test.php

// ...
$user->refresh(true);
$group->refresh(true);
```

You can also lazily refresh all defined relationships of a model using `Doctrine_Record::refreshRelated()`:

*Listing  
10-55*

```
// test.php

// ...
$user = Doctrine::getTable('User')->findOneByName('jon');
$user->refreshRelated();
```

If you want to refresh an individual specified relationship just pass the name of a relationship to the `refreshRelated()` function and it will lazily load the relationship:

*Listing  
10-56*

```
// test.php

// ...
$user->refreshRelated('Phonenumber');
```



## Deleting Records

Deleting records in Doctrine is handled by `Doctrine_Record::delete()`, `Doctrine_Collection::delete()` and `Doctrine_Connection::delete()` methods.

*Listing  
10-57*

```
// test.php

// ...
$userTable = Doctrine::getTable("User");

$user = $userTable->find(2);

// deletes user and all related composite objects
if($user !== false) {
    $user->delete();
}
```

If you have a `Doctrine_Collection` of `User` records you can call `delete()` and it will loop over all records calling `Doctrine_Record::delete()` for you.

*Listing  
10-58*

```
// test.php

// ...
$users = $userTable->findAll();
```

Now you can delete all users and their related composite objects by calling `Doctrine_Collection::delete()`. It will loop over all Users in the collection calling delete one each one:

*Listing  
10-59*

```
// test.php

// ...
$users->delete();
```

## Using Expression Values

There might be situations where you need to use SQL expressions as values of columns. This can be achieved by using `Doctrine_Expression` which converts portable DQL expressions to your native SQL expressions.

Lets say we have a class called `event` with columns `timepoint(datetime)` and `name(string)`. Saving the record with the current timestamp can be achieved as follows:

*Listing  
10-60*

```
// test.php

// ...
$user = new User();
$user->username = 'jwage';
```

```
$user->updated_at = new Doctrine_Expression('NOW()');
$user->save();
```

The above code would issue the following SQL query:

Listing  
10-61

```
INSERT INTO user (username, updated_at) VALUES ('jwage', NOW())
```



When you use `Doctrine_Expression` with your objects in order to get the updated value you will have to manually call `refresh()` to get the updated value from the database.

Listing  
10-62

```
// test.php

// ...
$user->refresh();
```

## Getting Record State

Every `Doctrine_Record` has a state. First of all records can be transient or persistent. Every record that is retrieved from database is persistent and every newly created record is considered transient. If a `Doctrine_Record` is retrieved from database but the only loaded property is its primary key, then this record has a state called proxy.

Every transient and persistent `Doctrine_Record` is either clean or dirty. `Doctrine_Record` is clean when none of its properties are changed and dirty when at least one of its properties has changed.

A record can also have a state called locked. In order to avoid infinite recursion in some rare circular reference cases Doctrine uses this state internally to indicate that a record is currently under a manipulation operation.

Below is a table containing all the different states a record can be in with a short description of it:

Name	Description
<code>Doctrine_Record::STATE_PROXY</code>	Record is in proxy state meaning its persistent but not all of its properties are loaded from the database.
<code>Doctrine_Record::STATE_TCLEAN</code>	Record is transient clean, meaning its transient and none of its properties are changed.
<code>Doctrine_Record::STATE_TDIRTY</code>	Record is transient dirty, meaning its transient and some of its properties are changed.
<code>Doctrine_Record::STATE_DIRTY</code>	Record is dirty, meaning its persistent and some of its properties are changed.
<code>Doctrine_Record::STATE_CLEAN</code>	Record is clean, meaning its persistent and none of its properties are changed.
<code>Doctrine_Record::STATE_LOCKED</code>	Record is locked.

You can easily get the state of a record by using the `Doctrine_Record::state()` method:

Listing  
10-63

```
// test.php

// ...
$user = new User();

if ($user->state() == Doctrine_Record::STATE_TDIRTY) {
    echo 'Record is transient dirty';
}
```



The above object is TDIRTY because it has some default values specified in the schema. If we use an object that has no default values and instantiate a new instance it will return TCLEAN.

---

*Listing  
10-64*

```
// test.php

// ...
$account = new Account();

if ($account->state() == Doctrine_Record::STATE_TCLEAN) {
    echo 'Record is transient clean';
}
```

## Getting Object Copy

Sometimes you may want to get a copy of your object (a new object with all properties copied). Doctrine provides a simple method for this: `Doctrine_Record::copy()`.

*Listing  
10-65*

```
// test.php

// ...
$copy = $user->copy65();
```

Notice that copying the record with `copy()` returns a new record (state TDIRTY) with the values of the old record, and it copies the relations of that record. If you do not want to copy the relations too, you need to use `copy(false)`.

### Get a copy of user without the relations

*Listing  
10-66*

```
// test.php

// ...
$copy = $user->copy66(false);
```

---

<sup>65</sup>. <http://www.php.net/function.copy>

<sup>66</sup>. <http://www.php.net/function.copy>

Using the PHP `clone` functionality simply uses this `copy()` functionality internally:

Listing  
10-67

```
// test.php

// ...
$copy = clone $user;
```

## Saving a Blank Record

By default Doctrine doesn't execute when `save()` is being called on an unmodified record. There might be situations where you want to force-insert the record even if it has not been modified. This can be achieved by assigning the state of the record to `Doctrine_Record::STATE_TDIRTY`.

Listing  
10-68

```
// test.php

// ...
$user = new User();
$user->state('TDIRTY');
$user->save();
```

## Mapping Custom Values

There might be situations where you want to map custom values to records. For example values that depend on some outer sources and you only want these values to be available at runtime not persisting those values into database. This can be achieved as follows:

Listing  
10-69

```
// test.php

// ...
$user->mapValue('isRegistered', true);

$user->isRegistered; // true
```

## Serializing

Sometimes you may want to serialize your record objects (possibly for caching purposes):

Listing  
10-70

```
// test.php

// ...
$string = serialize67($user);

$user = unserialize68($string);
```

---

67. <http://www.php.net/function.serialize>

68. <http://www.php.net/function.unserialize>

## Checking Existence

Very commonly you'll need to know if given record exists in the database. You can use the `exists()` method for checking if given record has a database row equivalent:

*Listing  
10-71*

```
// test.php

// ...
$record = new User();

echo $record->exists() ? 'Exists':'Does Not Exist'; // Does Not Exist

$record->username = 'someone';
$record->save();

echo $record->exists() ? 'Exists':'Does Not Exist'; // Exists
```

## Function Callbacks for Columns

`Doctrine_Record` offers a way for attaching callback calls for column values. For example if you want to trim certain column, you can simply user:

*Listing  
10-72*

```
// test.php

// ...
$record->call('trim', 'username');
```

## Collection

`Doctrine_Collection` is a collection of records (see `Doctrine_Record`). As with records the collections can be deleted and saved using `Doctrine_Collection::delete()` and `Doctrine_Collection::save()` accordingly.

When fetching data from database with either DQL API (see `Doctrine_Query`) or `rawSql` API (see `Doctrine_RawSql`) the methods return an instance of `Doctrine_Collection` by default.

The following example shows how to initialize a new collection:

*Listing  
10-73*

```
// test.php

// ...
$users = new Doctrine_Collection('User');
```

Now add some new data to the collection:

Listing  
10-74

```
// test.php

// ...
$users[0]->username = 'Arnold';
$users[1]->username = 'Somebody';
```

Now just like we can delete a collection we can save it:

Listing  
10-75

```
$users->save();
```

## Accessing Elements

You can access the elements of `Doctrine_Collection` with `set()` and `get()` methods or with `ArrayAccess` interface.

Listing  
10-76

```
// test.php

// ...
$userTable = Doctrine::getTable('User');
$users = $userTable->findAll();
```

### Accessing elements with `ArrayAccess` interface

Listing  
10-77

```
// test.php

// ...
$users[0]->username = "Jack Daniels";
$users[1]->username = "John Locke";
```

### Accessing elements with `get()`

Listing  
10-78

```
echo $users->get(1)->username;
```

## Adding new Elements

When accessing single elements of the collection and those elements (records) don't exist Doctrine auto-adds them.

In the following example we fetch all users from database (there are 5) and then add couple of users in the collection.

As with PHP arrays the indexes start from zero.

*Listing  
10-79*

```
// test.php

// ...
$users = $userTable->findAll();

echo count69($users); // 5

$users[5]->username = "new user 1";
$users[6]->username = "new user 2";
```

You could also optionally omit the 5 and 6 from the array index and it will automatically increment just as a PHP array would:

*Listing  
10-80*

```
// test.php

// ...
$users[]->username = 'new user 3'; // key is 7
$users[]->username = 'new user 4'; // key is 8
```

## Getting Collection Count

The `Doctrine_Collection::count()` method returns the number of elements currently in the collection.

*Listing  
10-81*

```
// test.php

// ...
$users = $userTable->findAll();

echo $users->count70();
```

Since `Doctrine_Collection` implements `Countable` interface a valid alternative for the previous example is to simply pass the collection as an argument for the `count()` function.

*Listing  
10-82*

```
// test.php

// ...
echo count71($users);
```

---

<sup>69.</sup> <http://www.php.net/function.count>

<sup>70.</sup> <http://www.php.net/function.count>

<sup>71.</sup> <http://www.php.net/function.count>

## Saving the Collection

Similar to `Doctrine_Record` the collection can be saved by calling the `save()` method. When `save()` gets called Doctrine issues `save()` operations on all records and wraps the whole procedure in a transaction.

Listing  
10-83

```
// test.php

// ...
$users = $userTable->findAll();

$users[0]->username = 'Jack Daniels';

$users[1]->username = 'John Locke';

$users->save();
```

## Deleting the Collection

Doctrine Collections can be deleted in very same way is Doctrine Records you just call `delete()` method. As for all collections Doctrine knows how to perform single-shot-delete meaning it only performs one database query for the each collection.

For example if we have collection of users. When deleting the collection of users doctrine only performs one query for this whole transaction. The query would look something like:

Listing  
10-84

```
DELETE
FROM user
WHERE id IN (1,2,3,
... ,N)
```

## Key Mapping

Sometimes you may not want to use normal indexing for collection elements. For example in some cases mapping primary keys as collection keys might be useful. The following example demonstrates how this can be achieved.

Map the id column

Listing  
10-85

```
// test.php

// ....
$userTable = Doctrine::getTable('User');

$userTable->setAttribute(Doctrine::ATTR_COLL_KEY, 'id');
```

Now user collections will use the values of id column as element indexes:

Listing  
10-86

```
// test.php

// ...
```



```
$users = $userTable->findAll();

foreach($users as $id => $user) {
    echo $id . $user->username;
}
```

You may want to map the name column:

*Listing  
10-87*

```
// test.php

// ...
$userTable = Doctrine::getTable('User');

$userTable->setAttribute(Doctrine::ATTR_COLL_KEY, 'username');
```

Now user collections will use the values of name column as element indexes:

*Listing  
10-88*

```
// test.php

// ...
$users = $userTable->findAll();

foreach($users as $username => $user) {
    echo $username . ' - ' . $user->created_at . "\n";
}
```



Note this would only be advisable if the `username` column is specified as unique in your schema otherwise you will have cases where data cannot be hydrated properly due to duplicate collection keys.

---

## Loading Related Records

Doctrine provides means for efficiently retrieving all related records for all record elements. That means when you have for example a collection of users you can load all phonenumbers for all users by simple calling the `loadRelated()` method.

However, in most cases you don't need to load related elements explicitly, rather what you should do is try to load everything at once by using the DQL API and JOINS.

The following example uses three queries for retrieving users, their phonenumbers and the groups they belong to.

*Listing  
10-89*

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->from('User u');
```

```
$users = $q->execute();
```

Now lets load phonenumbers for all users:

*Listing  
10-90*

```
// test.php

// ...
$users->loadRelated('Phonenumbers');

foreach($users as $user) {
    echo $user->Phonenumbers[0]->phonenumbers;
    // no additional db queries needed here
}
```

The `loadRelated()` works on any relation, even associations:

*Listing  
10-91*

```
// test.php

// ...
$users->loadRelated('Groups');

foreach($users as $user) {
    echo $user->Groups[0]->name;
}
```

The example below shows how to do this more efficiently by using the DQL API.  
Write a `Doctrine_Query` that loads everything in one query:

*Listing  
10-92*

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->from('User u')
    ->leftJoin('u.Phonenumbers p')
    ->leftJoin('u.Groups g');

$users = $q->execute();
```

Now when we use the `Phonenumbers` and `Groups` no additional database queries are needed:

*Listing  
10-93*

```
// test.php

// ...
foreach($users as $user) {
```

```

    echo $user->Phonenumbers[0]->phonenumbers;
    echo $user->Groups[0]->name;
}

```

## Validator

Validation in Doctrine is a way to enforce your business rules in the model part of the MVC architecture. You can think of this validation as a gateway that needs to be passed right before data gets into the persistent data store. The definition of these business rules takes place at the record level, that means in your active record model classes (classes derived from `Doctrine_Record`). The first thing you need to do to be able to use this kind of validation is to enable it globally. This is done through the `Doctrine_Manager`.

*Listing  
10-94*

```

// bootstrap.php

// ...
$manager->setAttribute(Doctrine::ATTR_VALIDATE, Doctrine::VALIDATE_ALL);

```

Once you enabled validation, you'll get a bunch of validations automatically:

- **Data type validations:** All values assigned to columns are checked for the right type. That means if you specified

A column of your record as type 'integer', Doctrine will validate that any values assigned to that column are of this type. This kind of type validation tries to be as smart as possible since PHP is a loosely typed language. For example 2 as well as "7" are both valid integers whilst "3f" is not. Type validations occur on every column (since every column definition needs a type).

- **Length validation:** As the name implies, all values assigned to columns are validated to make sure that the value does not exceed the maximum length.

You can combine the following constants by using bitwise operations: `VALIDATE_ALL`, `VALIDATE_TYPES`, `VALIDATE_LENGTHS`, `VALIDATE_CONSTRAINTS`, `VALIDATE_NONE`.

For example to enable all validations except length validations you would use:

```

// bootstrap.php

// ...
$manager->setAttribute(Doctrine::ATTR_VALIDATE, VALIDATE_ALL &
~VALIDATE_LENGTHS);

```

*Listing  
10-95*

You can read more about this topic in the Data Validation chapter.

## More Validation

The type and length validations are handy but most of the time they're not enough. Therefore Doctrine provides some mechanisms that can be used to validate your data in more detail.

Validators are an easy way to specify further validations. Doctrine has a lot of predefined validators that are frequently needed such as email, country, ip, range and regexp

validators. You find a full list of available validators in the Data Validation chapter. You can specify which validators apply to which column through the 4th argument of the `hasColumn()` method. If that is still not enough and you need some specialized validation that is not yet available as a predefined validator you have three options:

- You can write the validator on your own.
- You can propose your need for a new validator to a Doctrine developer.
- You can use validation hooks.

The first two options are advisable if it is likely that the validation is of general use and is potentially applicable in many situations. In that case it is a good idea to implement a new validator. However if the validation is special it is better to use hooks provided by Doctrine:

- `validate()` (Executed every time the record gets validated)
- `validateOnInsert()` (Executed when the record is new and gets validated)
- `validateOnUpdate()` (Executed when the record is not new and gets validated)

If you need a special validation in your active record you can simply override one of these methods in your active record class (a descendant of `Doctrine_Record`). Within these methods you can use all the power of PHP to validate your fields. When a field does not pass your validation you can then add errors to the record's error stack. The following code snippet shows an example of how to define validators together with custom validation:

Listing  
10-96

```
// models/User.php

class User extends BaseUser
{
    protected function validate()
    {
        if ($this->username == 'God') {
            // Blasphemy! Stop that! ;-)
            // syntax: add(<fieldName>, <error code/identifier>)
            $errorStack = $this->getErrorStack();
            $errorStack->add('name', 'You cannot use this username!');
        }
    }
}

// models/Email.php

class Email extends BaseEmail
{
    // ...

    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        parent::setTableDefinition();

        // ...

        // validators 'email' and 'unique' used
        $this->hasColumn('address','string', 150, array('email', 'unique'));
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

```
# schema.yml
```

*Listing  
10-97*

```
# ...
Email:
  columns:
    address:
      type: string(150)
      email: true
      unique: true
```

## Valid or Not Valid

Now that you know how to specify your business rules in your models, it is time to look at how to deal with these rules in the rest of your application.

### Implicit Validation

Whenever a record is going to be saved to the persistent data store (i.e. through calling `$record->save()`) the full validation procedure is executed. If errors occur during that process an exception of the type `Doctrine_Validator_Exception` will be thrown. You can catch that exception and analyze the errors by using the instance method `Doctrine_Validator_Exception::getInvalidRecords()`. This method returns an ordinary array with references to all records that did not pass validation. You can then further explore the errors of each record by analyzing the error stack of each record. The error stack of a record can be obtained with the instance method `Doctrine_Record::getErrorStack()`. Each error stack is an instance of the class `Doctrine_Validator_ErrorStack`. The error stack provides an easy to use interface to inspect the errors.

### Explicit Validation

You can explicitly trigger the validation for any record at any time. For this purpose `Doctrine_Record` provides the instance method `Doctrine_Record::isValid()`. This method returns a boolean value indicating the result of the validation. If the method returns false, you can inspect the error stack in the same way as seen above except that no exception is thrown, so you simply obtain the error stack of the record that didn't pass validation through `Doctrine_Record::getErrorStack()`.

The following code snippet shows an example of handling implicit validation which caused a `Doctrine_Validator_Exception`.

```
// test.php
```

*Listing  
10-98*

```
// ...
$user = new User();

try {
    $user->username = str_repeat72('t', 256);
    $user->Email->address = "drink@notvalid..";
    $user->save();
} catch(Doctrine_Validator_Exception $e) {
```

---

72. [http://www.php.net/function.str\\_repeat](http://www.php.net/function.str_repeat)

```

$userErrors = $user->getErrorStack();
$emailErrors = $user->Email->getErrorStack();

foreach($userErrors as $fieldName => $errorCodes) {
    echo $fieldName . " - " . implode73(' ', $errorCodes) . "\n";
}

foreach($emailErrors as $fieldName => $errorCodes) {
    echo $fieldName . " - " . implode74(' ', $errorCodes) . "\n";
}
}

```



You could also use `$e->getInvalidRecords()`. The direct way used above is just more simple when you know the records you're dealing with.

You can also retrieve the error stack as a nicely formatted string for easy use in your applications:

Listing  
10-99

```

// test.php

// ...
echo $user->getErrorStackAsString();

```

It would output an error string that looks something like the following:

Listing  
10-100

```

Validation failed in class User

1 field had validation error:

* 1 validator failed on username (length)

```

## Profiler

`Doctrine_Connection_Profiler` is an event listener for `Doctrine_Connection`. It provides flexible query profiling. Besides the SQL strings the query profiles include elapsed time to run the queries. This allows inspection of the queries that have been performed without the need for adding extra debugging code to model classes.

`Doctrine_Connection_Profiler` can be enabled by adding it as an event listener for `Doctrine_Connection`.

Listing  
10-101

```

// test.php

// ...
$profiler = new Doctrine_Connection_Profiler();

$conn = Doctrine_Manager::connection();

```

<sup>73</sup>. <http://www.php.net/function.implode>

<sup>74</sup>. <http://www.php.net/function.implode>

```
$conn->setListener($profiler);
```

## Basic Usage

Perhaps some of your pages is loading slowly. The following shows how to build a complete profiler report from the connection:

*Listing  
10-102*

```
// test.php

// ...
$time = 0;
foreach ($profiler as $event) {
    $time += $event->getElapsedSecs();
    echo $event->getName() . " " . sprintf75("%f", $event->getElapsedSecs()) . "\n";
    echo $event->getQuery() . "\n";
    $params = $event->getParams();
    if( ! empty($params)) {
        print_r76($params);
    }
}
echo "Total time: " . $time . "\n";
```



Frameworks like symfony<sup>77</sup>, Zend<sup>78</sup>, etc. offer web debug toolbars that use this functionality provided by Doctrine for reporting the number of queries executed on every page as well as the time it takes for each query.

## Locking Manager



The term 'Transaction' does not refer to database transactions here but to the general meaning of this term.

Locking is a mechanism to control concurrency. The two most well known locking strategies are optimistic and pessimistic locking. The following is a short description of these two strategies from which only pessimistic locking is currently supported by Doctrine.

### Optimistic Locking

The state/version of the object(s) is noted when the transaction begins. When the transaction finishes the noted state/version of the participating objects is compared to the current state/version. When the states/versions differ the objects have been modified by another transaction and the current transaction should fail. This approach is called 'optimistic' because it is assumed that it is unlikely that several users will participate in transactions on the same objects at the same time.

<sup>75</sup>. <http://www.php.net/function.sprintf>

<sup>76</sup>. [http://www.php.net/function.print\\_r](http://www.php.net/function.print_r)

<sup>77</sup>. <http://www.symfony-project.com>

<sup>78</sup>. <http://framework.zend.com>

## Pessimistic Locking

The objects that need to participate in the transaction are locked at the moment the user starts the transaction. No other user can start a transaction that operates on these objects while the locks are active. This ensures that the user who starts the transaction can be sure that no one else modifies the same objects until he has finished his work.

Doctrine's pessimistic offline locking capabilities can be used to control concurrency during actions or procedures that take several HTTP request and response cycles and/or a lot of time to complete.

## Examples

The following code snippet demonstrates the use of Doctrine's pessimistic offline locking capabilities.

At the page where the lock is requested get a locking manager instance:

*Listing  
10-103*

```
// test.php

// ...
$lockingManager = new Doctrine_Locking_Manager_Pessimistic();
```



Ensure that old locks which timed out are released before we try to acquire our lock 300 seconds = 5 minutes timeout. This can be done by using the `releaseAgedLocks()` method.

---

*Listing  
10-104*

```
// test.php

// ...
$user = Doctrine::getTable('User')->find(1);

try
{
    $lockingManager->releaseAgedLocks(300);

    $gotLock = $lockingManager->getLock($user, 'jwage');

    if ($gotLock)
    {
        echo "Got lock!";
    }
    else
    {
        echo "Sorry, someone else is currently working on this record";
    }
} catch(Doctrine_Locking_Exception $dle) {
    echo $dle->getMessage();
    // handle the error
}
```



At the page where the transaction finishes get a locking manager instance:

*Listing  
10-105*

```
// test.php

// ...
$user = Doctrine::getTable('User')->find(1);

$lockingManager = new Doctrine_Locking_Manager_Pessimistic();

try
{
    if ($lockingManager->releaseLock($user, 'jwage'))
    {
        echo "Lock released";
    }
    else
    {
        echo "Record was not locked. No locks released.";
    }
}
catch(Doctrine_Locking_Exception $dle)
{
    echo $dle->getMessage();
    // handle the error
}
```

## Technical Details

The pessimistic offline locking manager stores the locks in the database (therefore 'offline'). The required locking table is automatically created when you try to instantiate an instance of the manager and the `ATTR_CREATE_TABLES` is set to `TRUE`. This behavior may change in the future to provide a centralized and consistent table creation procedure for installation purposes.

## Views

Database views can greatly increase the performance of complex queries. You can think of them as cached queries. `Doctrine_View` provides integration between database views and DQL queries.

### Using Views

Using views on your database using Doctrine is easy. We provide a nice `Doctrine_View` class which provides functionality for creating, dropping and executing views.

The `Doctrine_View` class integrates with the `Doctrine_Query` class by saving the SQL that would be executed by `Doctrine_Query`.

First lets create a new `Doctrine_Query` instance to work with:

*Listing  
10-106*

```
// test.php
```

```
// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->from('User u')
    ->leftJoin('u.Ponenumber p')
    ->limit(20);
```

Now lets create the `Doctrine_View` instance and pass it the `Doctrine_Query` instance as well as a name for identifying that database view:

*Listing  
10-107*

```
// test.php

// ...
$view = new Doctrine_View($q, 'RetrieveUsersAndPhonenumbers');
```

Now we can easily create the view by using the `Doctrine_View::create()` method:

*Listing  
10-108*

```
// test.php

// ...
try {
    $view->create();
} catch (Exception $e) {}
```

Alternatively if you want to drop the database view you use the `Doctrine_View::drop()` method:

*Listing  
10-109*

```
// test.php

// ...
try {
    $view->drop();
} catch (Exception $e) {}
```

Using views are extremely easy. Just use the `Doctrine_View::execute()` for executing the view and returning the results just as a normal `Doctrine_Query` object would:

*Listing  
10-110*

```
// test.php

// ...
$users = $view->execute();

foreach ($users as $user) {
    print_r79($user->toArray());
}
```

---

<sup>79</sup>. [http://www.php.net/function.print\\_r](http://www.php.net/function.print_r)

## Conclusion

We now have been exposed to a very large percentage of the core functionality provided by Doctrine. The next chapters of this book are documentation that cover some of the optional functionality that can help make your life easier on a day to basis.

Lets move on to the next chapter where we can learn about how to use native SQL to hydrate our data in to arrays and objects instead of the Doctrine Query Language.

## Chapter 11

# Native SQL

## Introduction

`Doctrine_RawSql` provides a convenient interface for building raw sql queries. Similar to `Doctrine_Query`, `Doctrine_RawSql` provides means for fetching arrays and objects. Whichever way you prefer.

Using raw sql for fetching might be useful when you want to utilize database specific features such as query hints or the `CONNECT` keyword in Oracle.

Creating a `Doctrine_RawSql` object is easy:

*Listing  
11-1*

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = new Doctrine_RawSql();
```

Optionally a connection parameter can be given and it accepts an instance of `Doctrine_Connection`. You learned how to create connections in the `Connections` chapter.

*Listing  
11-2*

```
// test.php

// ...
$conn = Doctrine_Manager::connection();
$q = new Doctrine_RawSql($conn);
```

## Component Queries

The first thing to notice when using `Doctrine_RawSql` is that you always have to place the fields you are selecting in curly brackets `{}`. Also for every selected component you have to call `addComponent()`.

The following example should clarify the usage of these:

*Listing  
11-3*

```
// test.php
```

```
// ...
$q->select('{u.*}')
  ->from('user u')
  ->addComponent('u', 'User');

$users = $q->execute();
print_r80($users->toArray());
```



Note above that we tell that user table is bound to class called User by using the `addComponent()` method.

---

Pay attention to following things:

- Fields must be in curly brackets.
- For every selected table there must be one `addComponent()` call.

## Fetching from Multiple Components

When fetching from multiple components the `addComponent()` calls become a bit more complicated as not only do we have to tell which tables are bound to which components, we also have to tell the parser which components belongs to which.

In the following example we fetch all users and their phonenumbers. First create a new `Doctrine_RawSql` object and add the select parts:

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = new Doctrine_RawSql();
$q->select('{u.*}', {p.*}');
```

*Listing  
11-4*

Now we need to add the **FROM** part to the query with the join to the phonenummer table from the user table and map everything together:

```
// test.php

// ...
$q->from('user u LEFT JOIN phonenummer p ON u.id = p.user_id')
```

*Listing  
11-5*

Now we tell that user table is bound to class called User we also add an alias for User class called u. This alias will be used when referencing the User class.

```
// test.php
```

*Listing  
11-6*

---

<sup>80</sup>. [http://www.php.net/function.print\\_r](http://www.php.net/function.print_r)

```
// ...
$q->addComponent('u', 'User u');
```

Now we add another component that is bound to table `phonenumbers`:

Listing  
11-7

```
// test.php

// ...
$q->addComponent('p', 'u.Phonenumbers p');
```



Notice how we reference that the `Phonenumber` class is the `User`'s `phonenumbers`.

---

Now we can execute the `Doctrine_RawSql` query just like if you were executing a `Doctrine_Query` object:

Listing  
11-8

```
// test.php

// ...
$users = $q->execute();
echo get_class81($users) . "\n";
echo get_class82($users[0]) . "\n";
echo get_class83($users[0]['Phonenumbers'][0]) . "\n";
```

The above example would output the following when executed:

Listing  
11-9

```
$ php test.php
Doctrine_Collection
User
Phonenumber
```

## Conclusion

This chapter may or may not be useful for you right now. In most cases the Doctrine Query Language is plenty sufficient for retrieving the complex data sets you require. But if you require something outside the scope of what `Doctrine_Query` is capable of then `Doctrine_RawSql` can help you.

In the previous chapters you've seen a lot of mention about YAML schema files and have been given examples of schema files but haven't really been trained on how to write your own. The next chapter explains in great detail how to maintain your models as YAML Schema Files.

---

81. [http://www.php.net/function.get\\_class](http://www.php.net/function.get_class)

82. [http://www.php.net/function.get\\_class](http://www.php.net/function.get_class)

83. [http://www.php.net/function.get\\_class](http://www.php.net/function.get_class)

## Chapter 12

# YAML Schema Files

## Introduction

The purpose of schema files is to allow you to manage your model definitions directly from a YAML file rather than editing php code. The YAML schema file is parsed and used to generate all your model definitions/classes. This makes Doctrine model definitions much more portable.

Schema files support all the normal things you would write with manual php code. Component to connection binding, relationships, attributes, templates/behaviors, indexes, etc.

## Abbreviated Syntax

Doctrine offers the ability to specify schema in an abbreviated syntax. A lot of the schema parameters have values they default to, this allows us to abbreviate the syntax and let Doctrine just use its defaults. Below is an example of schema taking advantage of all the abbreviations.



The `detect_relations` option will attempt to guess relationships based on column names. In the example below Doctrine knows that `User` has one `Contact` and will automatically define the relationship between the models.

```
detect_relations: true
```

```
User:
```

```
  columns:
    username: string
    password: string
    contact_id: integer
```

```
Contact:
```

```
  columns:
    first_name: string
    last_name: string
    phone: string
    email: string
    address: string
```

*Listing  
12-1*

## Verbose Syntax

Here is the 100% verbose form of the above schema:

*Listing  
12-2*

```
User:
  columns:
    username:
      type: string(255)
    password:
      type: string(255)
    contact_id:
      type: integer
  relations:
    Contact:
      class: Contact
      local: contact_id
      foreign: id
      foreignAlias: User
      foreignType: one
      type: one

Contact:
  columns:
    first_name:
      type: string(255)
    last_name:
      type: string(255)
    phone:
      type: string(255)
    email:
      type: string(255)
    address:
      type: string(255)
  relations:
    User:
      class: User
      local: id
      foreign: contact_id
      foreignAlias: Contact
      foreignType: one
      type: one
```

In the above example we do not define the `detect_relations` option, instead we manually define the relationships so we have complete control over the configuration of the local/foreign key, type and alias of the relationship on each side.

## Relationships

When specifying relationships it is only necessary to specify the relationship on the end where the foreign key exists. When the schema file is parsed, it reflects the relationship and builds the opposite end automatically. If you specify the other end of the relationship manually, the auto generation will have no effect.



## Detect Relations

Doctrine offers the ability to specify a `detect_relations` option as you saw earlier. This feature provides automatic relationship building based on column names. If you have a `User` model with a `contact_id` and a class with the name `Contact` exists, it will automatically create the relationships between the two.

## Customizing Relationships

Doctrine only requires that you specify the relationship on the end where the foreign key exists. The opposite end of the relationship will be reflected and built on the opposite end. The schema syntax offers the ability to customize the relationship alias and type of the opposite end. This is good news because it means you can maintain all the relevant relationship information in one place. Below is an example of how to customize the alias and type of the opposite end of the relationship. It demonstrates the relationships `User` has one `Contact` and `Contact` has one `User` as `UserModel`. Normally it would have automatically generated `User` has one `Contact` and `Contact` has many `User`. The `foreignType` and `foreignAlias` options allow you to customize the opposite end of the relationship.

```
User:
  columns:
    id:
      type: integer(4)
      primary: true
      autoincrement: true
    contact_id:
      type: integer(4)
    username:
      type: string(255)
    password:
      type: string(255)
  relations:
    Contact:
      foreignType: one
      foreignAlias: UserModel
```

*Listing  
12-3*

```
Contact:
  columns:
    id:
      type: integer(4)
      primary: true
      autoincrement: true
    name:
      type: string(255)
```

You can quickly detect and create the relationships between two models with the `detect_relations` option like below.

```
detect_relations: true
```

*Listing  
12-4*

```
User:
  columns:
    id:
      type: integer(4)
      primary: true
      autoincrement: true
    avatar_id:
```

```

        type: integer(4)
    username:
        type: string(255)
    password:
        type: string(255)

Avatar:
    columns:
        id:
            type: integer(4)
            primary: true
            autoincrement: true
        name:
            type: string(255)
        image_file:
            type: string(255)

```

The resulting relationships would be User has one Avatar and Avatar has many User.

## One to One

Listing  
12-5

```

User:
    columns:
        id:
            type: integer(4)
            primary: true
            autoincrement: true
        contact_id:
            type: integer(4)
        username:
            type: string(255)
        password:
            type: string(255)
    relations:
        Contact:
            foreignType: one

Contact:
    columns:
        id:
            type: integer(4)
            primary: true
            autoincrement: true
        name:
            type: string(255)

```

## One to Many

Listing  
12-6

```

User:
    columns:
        id:
            type: integer(4)
            primary: true
            autoincrement: true
        contact_id:
            type: integer(4)

```

```

    username:
      type: string(255)
    password:
      type: string(255)

Phonenumber:
  columns:
    id:
      type: integer(4)
      primary: true
      autoincrement: true
    name:
      type: string(255)
    user_id:
      type: integer(4)
  relations:
    User:
      foreignAlias: Phonenumbers

```

## Many to Many

```

User:
  columns:
    id:
      type: integer(4)
      autoincrement: true
      primary: true
    username:
      type: string(255)
    password:
      type: string(255)
  attributes:
    export: all
    validate: true

```

```

Group:
  tableName: group_table
  columns:
    id:
      type: integer(4)
      autoincrement: true
      primary: true
    name:
      type: string(255)
  relations:
    Users:
      foreignAlias: Groups
      class: User
      refClass: GroupUser

```

```

GroupUser:
  columns:
    group_id:
      type: integer(4)
      primary: true
    user_id:
      type: integer(4)

```

*Listing  
12-7*

```

    primary: true
relations:
  Group:
    foreignAlias: GroupUsers
  User:
    foreignAlias: GroupUsers

```

This creates a set of models where User has many Groups, Group has many Users, GroupUser has one User and GroupUser has one Group.

## Features & Examples

### Connection Binding

If you're not using schema files to manage your models, you will normally use this code to bind a component to a connection name with the following code:

Create a connection with code like below:

*Listing  
12-8*

```
Doctrine_Manager::connection('mysql://jwage:pass@localhost/connection1',
'connection1');
```

Now somewhere in your Doctrine bootstrapping of Doctrine you would bind the model to that connection:

*Listing  
12-9*

```
Doctrine_Manager::connection()->bindComponent('User', 'conn1');
```

Schema files offer the ability to bind it to a specific connection by specifying the connection parameter. If you do not specify the connection the model will just use the current connection set on the Doctrine\_Manager instance.

*Listing  
12-10*

```
User:
  connection: connection1
  columns:
    id:
      type: integer(4)
      primary: true
      autoincrement: true
    contact_id:
      type: integer(4)
    username:
      type: string(255)
    password:
      type: string(255)

```

### Attributes

Doctrine offers the ability to set attributes for your generated models directly in your schema files similar to how you would if you were manually writing your Doctrine\_Record child classes.

```
User:
  connection: connection1
  columns:
    id:
      type: integer(4)
      primary: true
      autoincrement: true
    contact_id:
      type: integer(4)
    username:
      type: string(255)
    password:
      type: string(255)
  attributes:
    export: none
    validate: false
```

*Listing  
12-11*

## Enums

To use enum columns in your schema file you must specify the type as enum and specify an array of values for the possible enum values.

```
TvListing:
  tableName: tv_listing
  actAs: [Timestampable]
  columns:
    notes:
      type: string
    taping:
      type: enum
      length: 4
      values: ['live', 'tape']
    region:
      type: enum
      length: 4
      values: ['US', 'CA']
```

*Listing  
12-12*

## ActAs Behaviors

You can attach behaviors to your models with the `actAs` option. You can specify something like the following:

```
User:
  connection: connection1
  columns:
    id:
      type: integer(4)
      primary: true
      autoincrement: true
    contact_id:
      type: integer(4)
    username:
      type: string(255)
    password:
      type: string(255)
  actAs:
    Timestampable:
```

*Listing  
12-13*

```

Sluggable:
  fields: [username]
  name: slug      # defaults to 'slug'
  type: string    # defaults to 'clob'
  length: 255    # defaults to null. clob doesn't require a length

```



The options specified on the Sluggable behavior above are optional as they will use defaults values if you do not specify anything. Since they are defaults it is not necessary to type it out all the time.

---

Listing  
12-14

```

User:
  connection: connection1
  columns:
# ...
  actAs: [Timestampable, Sluggable]

```

## Listeners

If you have a listener you'd like attached to a model, you can specify them directly in the yml as well.

Listing  
12-15

```

User:
  listeners: [ MyCustomListener ]
  columns:
    id:
      type: integer(4)
      primary: true
      autoincrement: true
    contact_id:
      type: integer(4)
    username:
      type: string(255)
    password:
      type: string(255)

```

The above syntax will generated a base class that looks something like the following:

Listing  
12-16

```

class BaseUser extends Doctrine_Record
{
    // ...

    public setUp()
    {
        // ...
        $this->addListener(new MyCustomListener());
    }
}

```

## Options

Specify options for your tables and when Doctrine creates your tables from your models the options will be set on the create table statement.

```
User:
  connection: connection1
  columns:
    id:
      type: integer(4)
      primary: true
      autoincrement: true
    contact_id:
      type: integer(4)
    username:
      type: string(255)
    password:
      type: string(255)
  options:
    type: INNODB
    collate: utf8_unicode_ci
    charset: utf8
```

*Listing  
12-17*

## Indexes

Please see the Indexes section of the chapter for more information about indexes and their options.

```
UserProfile:
  columns:
    user_id:
      type: integer
      length: 4
      primary: true
      autoincrement: true
    first_name:
      type: string
      length: 20
    last_name:
      type: string
      length: 20
  indexes:
    name_index:
      fields:
        first_name:
          sorting: ASC
          length: 10
          primary: true
        last_name: []
      type: unique
```

*Listing  
12-18*

This is the PHP line of code that is auto-generated inside `setTableDefinition()` inside your base model class for the index definition used above:

```
$this->index('name_index', array(
    'fields' => array(
        'first_name' => array(
            'sorting' => 'ASC',
            'length' => '10',
            'primary' => true
        ),
    ),
```

*Listing  
12-19*

```

        'last_name' => array()),
        'type' => 'unique'
    )
);

```

## Inheritance

Below we will demonstrate how you can setup the different types of inheritance using YAML schema files.

### Simple Inheritance

*Listing  
12-20*

```

Entity:
  columns:
    name: string(255)
    username: string(255)
    password: string(255)

User:
  inheritance:
    extends: Entity
    type: simple

Group:
  inheritance:
    extends: Entity
    type: simple

```



Any columns or relationships defined in models that extend another in simple inheritance will be moved to the parent when the PHP classes are built.

---

You can read more about this topic in the [doc inheritance:simple-inheritance :name] chapter.

### Concrete Inheritance

*Listing  
12-21*

```

TextItem:
  columns:
    topic: string(255)

Comment:
  inheritance:
    extends: TextItem
    type: concrete
  columns:
    content: string(300)

```

You can read more about this topic in the Concrete chapter.

### Column Aggregation Inheritance



Like simple inheritance, any columns or relationships added to the children will be automatically removed and moved to the parent when the PHP classes are built.

---



First lets defined a model named `Entity` that our other models will extend from:

```
Entity:
  columns:
    name: string(255)
    type: string(255)
```

*Listing  
12-22*



The type column above is optional. It will be automatically added when it is specified in the child class.

Now lets create a `User` model that extends the `Entity` model:

```
User:
  inheritance:
    extends: Entity
    type: column_aggregation
    keyField: type
    keyValue: User
  columns:
    username: string(255)
    password: string(255)
```

*Listing  
12-23*



The type option under the inheritance definition is optional as it is implied if you specify a keyField or keyValue. If the keyField is not specified it will default to add a column named type. The keyValue will default to the name of the model if you do not specify anything.

Again lets create another model that extends `Entity` named `Group`:

```
Group:
  inheritance:
    extends: Entity
    type: column_aggregation
    keyField: type
    keyValue: Group
  columns:
    description: string(255)
```

*Listing  
12-24*



The User username and password and the Group description columns will be automatically moved to the parent Entity.

You can read more about this topic in the Column Aggregation.

## Column Aliases

If you want the ability alias a column name as something other than the column name in the database this is easy to accomplish with Doctrine. We simple use the syntax "column\_name as field\_name" in the name of our column:

```
User:
  columns:
    login:
      name: login as username
      type: string(255)
```

*Listing  
12-25*

```
password:
  type: string(255)
```

The above example would allow you to access the column named `login` from the alias `username`.

## Packages

Doctrine offers the "package" parameter which will generate the models in to sub folders. With large schema files this will allow you to better organize your schemas in to folders.

Listing  
12-26

```
User:
  package: User
  columns:
    username: string(255)
```

The model files from this schema file would be put in a folder named `User`. You can specify more sub folders by doing "package: User.Models" and the models would be in `User/Models`

## Package Custom Path

You can also completely by pass the automatic generation of packages to the appropriate path by specifying a completely custom path to generate the package files:

Listing  
12-27

```
User:
  package: User
  package_custom_path: /path/to/generate/package
  columns:
    username: string(255)
```

## Global Schema Information

Doctrine schemas allow you to specify certain parameters that will apply to all of the models defined in the schema file. Below you can find an example on what global parameters you can set for schema files.

List of global parameters:

Name	Description
connection	Name of connection to bind the models to.
attributes	Array of attributes for models.
actAs	Array of behaviors for the models to act as.
options	Array of tables options for the models.
package	Package to put the models in.
inheritance	Array of inheritance information for models
detect_relations	Whether or not to try and detect foreign key relations

Now here is an example schema where we use some of the above global parameters:

Listing  
12-28

```
connection: conn_name1
actAs: [Timestampable]
options:
  type: INNODB
package: User
```

```

detect_relations: true

User:
  columns:
    id:
      type: integer(4)
      primary: true
      autoincrement: true
    contact_id:
      type: integer(4)
    username:
      type: string(255)
    password:
      type: string(255)

Contact:
  columns:
    id:
      type: integer(4)
      primary: true
      autoincrement: true
    name:
      type: string(255)

```

All of the settings at the top will be applied to every model which is defined in that YAML file.

## Using Schema Files

Once you have defined your schema files you need some code to build the models from the YAML definition.

*Listing  
12-29*

```

$options = array(
    'packagesPrefix' => 'Plugin',
    'baseClassName'  => 'MyDoctrineRecord',
    'suffix'         => '.php'
);

```

```
Doctrine::generateModelsFromYaml('/path/to/yaml', '/path/to/model', $options);
```

The above code will generate the models for `schema.yml` at `/path/to/generate/models`. Below is a table containing the different options you can use to customize the building of models. Notice we use the `packagesPrefix`, `baseClassName` and `suffix` options above.

Name	Default	Description
<code>packagesPrefix</code>	Package	What to prefix the middle package models with.
<code>packagesPath</code>	<code>#models_path#/ packages</code>	Path to write package files.
<code>generateBaseClasses</code>	true	Whether or not to generate abstract base models containing the definition and a top level class which is empty extends the base.

generateTableClasses	true	Whether or not to generate a table class for each model.
baseClassesDirectory	generated	Name of the folder to generate the base class definitions in.
baseClassName	Doctrine_Record	Name of the base Doctrine_Record class.
suffix	.php	Extension for your generated models.

## Conclusion

Now that we have learned all about YAML Schema files we are ready to move on to a great topic regarding Data Validation. This is an important topic because if you are not validating user inputted data yourself then we want Doctrine to validate data before being persisted to the database.

## Chapter 13

# Data Validation

## Introduction

Pulled directly from PostgreSQL Documentation<sup>84</sup>:

*Data types are a way to limit the kind of data that can be stored in a table. For many applications, however, the constraint they provide is too coarse. For example, a column containing a product price should probably only accept positive values. But there is no standard data type that accepts only positive numbers. Another issue is that you might want to constrain column data with respect to other columns or rows. For example, in a table containing product information, there should be only one row for each product number.*

Doctrine allows you to define *\*portable\** constraints on columns and tables. Constraints give you as much control over the data in your tables as you wish. If a user attempts to store data in a column that would violate a constraint, an error is raised. This applies even if the value came from the default value definition.

Doctrine constraints act as database level constraints as well as application level validators. This means double security: the database doesn't allow wrong kind of values and neither does the application.

Here is a full list of available validators within Doctrine:

validator(arguments)	constraints	description
notnull	NOT NULL	Ensures the 'not null' constraint in both application and database level
email		Checks if value is valid email.
notblank	NOT NULL	Checks if value is not blank.
nospace		Checks if value has no space chars.
past	CHECK constraint	Checks if value is a date in the past.
future		Checks if value is a date in the future.
minlength(length)		Checks if value satisfies the minimum length.

84. <http://www.postgresql.org/docs/8.2/static/ddl-constraints.html>

country		Checks if value is a valid country code.
ip		Checks if value is valid IP (internet protocol) address.
htmlcolor		Checks if value is valid html color.
range(min, max)	CHECK constraint	Checks if value is in range specified by arguments.
unique	UNIQUE constraint	Checks if value is unique in its database table.
regexp(expression)		Checks if value matches a given regexp.
creditcard		Checks whether the string is a well formatted credit card number
digits(int, frac)	Precision and scale	Checks if given value has <i>int</i> number of integer digits and <i>frac</i> number of fractional digits
date		Checks if given value is a valid date.
readonly		Checks if a field is modified and if it is returns false to force a field as readonly
unsigned		Checks if given integer value is unsigned.
usstate		Checks if given value is a valid US state code.

Below is an example of how you use the validator and how to specify the arguments for the validators on a column.

In our example we will use the minlength validator.

Listing  
13-1

```
// models/User.php

class User extends BaseUser
{
    // ...

    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        parent::setTableDefinition();

        // ...

        $this->hasColumn('username', 'string', 255, array(
            'minlength' => 12
        ));
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the YAML Schema Files chapter:

Listing  
13-2

```
# schema.yml

# ...
User:
  columns:
```

```

    username:
      type: string(255)
      minlength: 12
# ...

```

## Examples

### Not Null

A not-null constraint simply specifies that a column must not assume the null value. A not-null constraint is always written as a column constraint.

The following definition uses a notnull constraint for column name. This means that the specified column doesn't accept null values.

*Listing  
13-3*

```

// models/User.php

class User extends BaseUser
{
    // ...

    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        parent::setTableDefinition();

        // ...

        $this->hasColumn('username', 'string', 255, array(
            'notnull' => true,
            'primary' => true,
        ));
    }
}

```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

*Listing  
13-4*

```

# schema.yml

# ...
User:
  columns:
    username:
      type: string(255)
      notnull: true
      primary: true
# ...

```

When this class gets exported to database the following SQL statement would get executed (in MySQL):

*Listing  
13-5*

```
CREATE TABLE user (username VARCHAR(255) NOT NULL,
PRIMARY KEY(username))
```

The notnull constraint also acts as an application level validator. This means that if Doctrine validators are turned on, Doctrine will automatically check that specified columns do not contain null values when saved.

If those columns happen to contain null values `Doctrine_Validator_Exception` is raised.

## Email

The e-mail validator simply validates that the inputted value is indeed a valid e-mail address and that the MX records for the address domain resolve as a valid e-mail address.

Listing  
13-6

```
// models/User.php

class User extends BaseUser
{
    // ...

    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        parent::setTableDefinition();

        // ...

        $this->hasColumn('email', 'string', 255, array(
            'email' => true
        ));
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

Listing  
13-7

```
# schema.yml

# ...
User:
  columns:
# ...
  email:
    type: string(255)
    email: true
# ...
```

Now when we try and create a user with an invalid email address it will not validate:

Listing  
13-8

```
// test.php

// ...
$user = new User();
$user->username = 'jwage';
```



```
$user->email = 'jonwage';

if ( ! $user->isValid() ) {
    echo 'User is invalid!';
}
```

The above code will throw an exception because `jonwage` is not a valid e-mail address. Now we can take this even further and give a valid e-mail address format but an invalid domain name:

*Listing  
13-9*

```
// test.php

// ...
$user = new User();
$user->username = 'jwage';
$user->email = 'jonwage@somefakedomainiknowdoesntexist.com';

if ( ! $user->isValid() ) {
    echo 'User is invalid!';
}
```

Now the above code will still fail because the domain `somefakedomainiknowdoesntexist.com` does not exist and the php function `checkdnsrr()`<sup>85</sup> returned false.

## Not Blank

The not blank validator is similar to the not null validator except that it will fail on empty strings or strings with white space.

*Listing  
13-10*

```
// models/User.php

class User extends BaseUser
{
    // ...

    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        parent::setTableDefinition();

        // ...

        $this->hasColumn('username', 'string', 255, array(
            'notblank' => true
        ));
    }
}
```

---

85. <http://www.php.net/checkdnsrr>

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

*Listing 13-11*

```
# schema.yml

# ...
User:
  columns:
    username:
      type: string(255)
      notblank: true
# ...
```

Now if we try and save a `User` record with a username that is a single blank white space, validation will fail:

*Listing 13-12*

```
// test.php

// ...
$user = new User();
$user->username = ' ';

if ( ! $user->isValid() ) {
    echo 'User is invalid!';
}
```

## No Space

The no space validator is simple. It checks that the value doesn't contain any spaces.

*Listing 13-13*

```
// models/User.php

class User extends BaseUser
{
    // ...

    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        parent::setTableDefinition();

        // ...

        $this->hasColumn('username', 'string', 255, array(
            'nospace' => true
        ));
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

```
# schema.yml
```

*Listing  
13-14*

```
# ...
User:
  columns:
    username:
      type: string(255)
      nospace: true
# ...
```

Now if we try and save a User with a username that has a space in it, the validation will fail:

```
$user = new User();
$user->username = 'jon wage';

if ( ! $user->isValid() ) {
    echo 'User is invalid!';
}
```

*Listing  
13-15*

## Past

The past validator checks if the given value is a valid date in the past. In this example we'll have a User model with a `birthday` column and we want to validate that the date is in the past.

```
// models/User.php

class User extends BaseUser
{
    // ...

    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        parent::setTableDefinition();

        // ...

        $this->hasColumn('birthday', 'timestamp', null, array(
            'past' => true
        ));
    }
}
```

*Listing  
13-16*

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

*Listing  
13-17*

```
# schema.yml

# ...
User:
  columns:
# ...
    birthday:
      type: timestamp
      past: true
# ...
```

Now if we try and set a birthday that is not in the past we will get a validation error.

## Future

The future validator is the opposite of the past validator and checks if the given value is a valid date in the future. In this example we'll have a `User` model with a `next_appointment_date` column and we want to validate that the date is in the future.

Listing  
13-18

```
// models/User.php

class User extends BaseUser
{
    // ...

    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        parent::setTableDefinition();

        // ...

        $this->hasColumn('next_appointment_date', 'timestamp', null, array(
            'future' => true
        ));
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

Listing  
13-19

```
# schema.yml

# ...
User:
  columns:
# ...
    next_appointment_date:
      type: timestamp
      future: true
# ...
```

Now if we try and set an appointment date that is not in the future we will get a validation error.

## Min Length

The min length does exactly what it says. It checks that the value string length is greater than the specified minimum length. In this example we will have a `User` model with a `password` column where we want to make sure the length of the `password` is at least 5 characters long.

*Listing  
13-20*

```
// models/User.php

class User extends BaseUser
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        parent::setTableDefinition();

        // ...

        $this->hasColumn('password', 'timestamp', null, array(
            'minlength' => 5
        ));
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

*Listing  
13-21*

```
# schema.yml

# ...
User:
  columns:
# ...
  password:
    type: timestamp
    minlength: 5
# ...
```

Now if we try and save a `User` with a `password` that is shorter than 5 characters, the validation will fail.

*Listing  
13-22*

```
// test.php

// ...
$user = new User();
$user->username = 'jwage';
$user->password = 'test';

if ( ! $user->isValid()) {
    echo 'User is invalid because "test" is only 4 characters long!';
}
```

## Country

The country validator checks if the given value is a valid country code.

Listing  
13-23

```
// models/User.php

class User extends BaseUser
{
    // ...

    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        parent::setTableDefinition();

        // ...

        $this->hasColumn('country', 'string', 2, array(
            'country' => true
        ));
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

Listing  
13-24

```
# schema.yml

# ...
User:
  columns:
# ...
  country:
    type: string(2)
    country: true
# ...
```

Now if you try and save a User with an invalid country code the validation will fail.

Listing  
13-25

```
// test.php

// ...
$user = new User();
$user->username = 'jwage';
$user->country_code = 'zz';

if ( ! $user->isValid() ) {
    echo 'User is invalid because "zz" is not a valid country code!';
}
```

## IP Address

The ip address validator checks if the given value is a valid ip address.

*Listing  
13-26*

```
// models/User.php

class User extends BaseUser
{
    // ...

    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        parent::setTableDefinition();

        // ...

        $this->hasColumn('ip_address', 'string', 15, array(
            'ip' => true
        ));
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

*Listing  
13-27*

```
# schema.yml

# ...
User:
  columns:
# ...
  ip_address:
    type: string(15)
    ip: true
# ...
```

Now if you try and save a User with an invalid ip address the validation will fail.

*Listing  
13-28*

```
$user = new User();
$user->username = 'jwage';
$user->ip_address = '123.123';

if ( ! $user->isValid() ) {
    echo User is invalid because "123.123" is not a valid ip address
}
```

## HTML Color

The html color validator checks that the given value is a valid html hex color.

Listing  
13-29

```
// models/User.php

class User extends BaseUser
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        parent::setTableDefinition();

        // ...

        $this->hasColumn('favorite_color', 'string', 7, array(
            'htmlcolor' => true
        ));
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

Listing  
13-30

```
# schema.yml

# ...
User:
  columns:
# ...
  favorite_color:
    type: string(7)
    htmlcolor: true
# ...
```

Now if you try and save a `User` with an invalid html color value for the `favorite_color` column the validation will fail.

Listing  
13-31

```
// test.php

// ...
$user = new User();
$user->username = 'jwage';
$user->favorite_color = 'red';

if ( ! $user->isValid() ) {
    echo 'User is invalid because "red" is not a valid hex color';
}
```

## Range

The range validator checks if value is within given range of numbers.

Listing  
13-32

```
// models/User.php
```



```

class User extends BaseUser
{
    // ...

    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        parent::setTableDefinition();

        // ...

        $this->hasColumn('age', 'integer', 3, array(
            'range' => array(10, 100)
        ));
    }
}

```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

```
# schema.yml
```

*Listing  
13-33*

```

# ...
User:
  columns:
# ...
  age:
    type: integer(3)
    range: [10, 100]
# ...

```

Now if you try and save a User with an age that is less than 10 or greater than 100, the validation will fail.

```
// test.php
```

*Listing  
13-34*

```

// ...
$user = new User();
$user->username = 'jwage';
$user->age = '3';

if ( ! $user->isValid() ) {
    echo 'User is invalid because "3" is less than the minimum of "10"';
}

```

You can use the `range` validator to validate max and min values by omitting either one of the `0` or `1` keys of the range array. Below is an example:

```
// models/User.php
```

*Listing  
13-35*

```
class User extends BaseUser
```

```

{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        parent::setTableDefinition();

        // ...

        $this->hasColumn('age', 'integer', 3, array(
            'range' => array(1 => 100)
        ));
    }
}

```

The above would make it so that age has a max of 100. To have a minimum value simply specify 0 instead of 1 in the range array.

The YAML syntax for this would look like the following:

*Listing 13-36* # schema.yml

```

# ...
User:
  columns:
# ...
  age:
    type: integer(3)
    range:
      1: 100
# ...

```

## Unique

Unique constraints ensure that the data contained in a column or a group of columns is unique with respect to all the rows in the table.

In general, a unique constraint is violated when there are two or more rows in the table where the values of all of the columns included in the constraint are equal. However, two null values are not considered equal in this comparison. That means even in the presence of a unique constraint it is possible to store duplicate rows that contain a null value in at least one of the constrained columns. This behavior conforms to the SQL standard, but some databases do not follow this rule. So be careful when developing applications that are intended to be portable.

The following definition uses a unique constraint for column name.

*Listing 13-37* // models/User.php

```

class User extends BaseUser
{
    // ...

    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        parent::setTableDefinition();
    }
}

```

```

        // ...

        $this->hasColumn('username', 'string', 255, array(
            'unique' => true
        ))
    );
}
}

```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

```
# schema.yml
```

*Listing  
13-38*

```

# ...
User:
  columns:
    username:
      type: string(255)
      unique: true
# ....

```



You should only use unique constraints for columns other than the primary key because they are always unique already.

## Regular Expression

The regular expression validator is a simple way to validate column values against your own provided regular expression. In this example we will make sure the username contains only valid letters or numbers.

```
// models/User.php
```

*Listing  
13-39*

```

class User extends BaseUser
{
    // ...

    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        parent::setTableDefinition();

        // ...

        $this->hasColumn('username', 'string', 255, array(
            'regexp' => '/[a-zA-Z0-9]/'
        ))
    };
}

```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

*Listing 13-40* # schema.yml

```
# ...
User:
  columns:
    username:
      type: string(255)
      regexp: '/[a-zA-Z0-9]/'
# ...
```

Now if we were to try and save a `User` with a `username` that has any other character than a letter or number in it, the validation will fail:

*Listing 13-41*

```
// test.php

// ...
$user = new User();
$user->username = '[jwage]';

if ( ! $user->isValid() ) {
    echo 'User is invalid because the username contains a [ character';
}
```

## Credit Card

The credit card validator simply checks that the given value is indeed a valid credit card number.

*Listing 13-42*

```
// models/User.php

class User extends BaseUser
{
    // ...

    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        parent::setTableDefinition();

        // ...

        $this->hasColumn('cc_number', 'integer', 16, array(
            'creditcard' => true
        ));
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

```
# schema.yml
```

*Listing  
13-43*

```
# ...
User:
  columns:
# ...
  cc_number:
    type: integer(16)
    creditcard: true
# ...
```

## Read Only

The read only validator will fail validation if you modify a column that has the readonly validator enabled on it.

```
// models/User.php
```

*Listing  
13-44*

```
class User extends BaseUser
{
    // ...

    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        parent::setTableDefinition();

        // ...

        $this->hasColumn('readonly_value', 'string', 255, array(
            'readonly' => true
        ));
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

```
# schema.yml
```

*Listing  
13-45*

```
# ...
User:
  columns:
# ...
  readonly_value:
    type: integer(16)
    readonly: true
# ...
```

Now if I ever try and modify the column named `readonly_value` from a `User` object instance, validation will fail.

## Unsigned

The unsigned validator checks that the given integer value is unsigned.

Listing  
13-46

```
// models/User.php

class User extends BaseUser
{
    // ...

    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        parent::setTableDefinition();

        // ...

        $this->hasColumn('age', 'integer', 3, array(
            'unsigned' => true
        ));
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

Listing  
13-47

```
# schema.yml

# ...
User:
  columns:
# ...
  age:
    type: integer(3)
    unsigned: true
# ...
```

Now if I try and save a User with a negative age the validation will fail:

Listing  
13-48

```
// test.php

// ...
$user = new User();
$user->username = 'jwage';
$user->age = '-100';

if ( ! $user->isValid() ) {
    echo 'User is invalid because -100 is signed';
}
```

## US State

The us state validator checks that the given string is a valid US state code.

*Listing  
13-49*

```
// models/State.php

class State extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('name', 'string', 255);
        $this->hasColumn('code', 'string', 2, array(
            'usstate' => true
        ));
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

*Listing  
13-50*

```
# schema.yml

# ...
State:
  columns:
    name: string(255)
    code:
      type: string(2)
      usstate: true
```

Now if I try and save a `State` with an invalid state code then the validation will fail.

*Listing  
13-51*

```
$state = new State();
$state->name = 'Tennessee';
$state->code = 'ZZ';

if ( ! $state->isValid() ) {
    echo 'State is invalid because "ZZ" is not a valid state code';
}
```

## Conclusion

If we want Doctrine to validate our data before being persisted to the database, now we have the knowledge on how to do it. We can use the validators that are provided with the Doctrine core to perform common validations of our data.

The next chapter is an important one as we will discuss a great feature of Doctrine, Inheritance! Inheritance is a great way accomplish complex functionality with minimal code. After we discuss inheritance we will move on to a custom strategy that provides even better functionality than inheritance, called Behaviors.

## Chapter 14

# Inheritance

Doctrine supports three types of inheritance strategies which can be mixed together. The three types are simple, concrete and column aggregation. You will learn about these three different types of inheritance and how to use them in this chapter.



For this chapter let's delete all our existing schemas and models from our test environment we created and have been using in the earlier chapters.

---

Listing  
14-1

```
$ rm schema.yml
$ touch schema.yml
$ rm -rf models/*
```

## Simple

Simple inheritance is the easiest and simplest inheritance to use. In simple inheritance all the child classes share the same columns as the parent and all information is stored in the parent table.

Listing  
14-2

```
// models/Entity.php

class Entity extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('name', 'string', 30);
        $this->hasColumn('username', 'string', 20);
        $this->hasColumn('password', 'string', 16);
        $this->hasColumn('created_at', 'timestamp');
        $this->hasColumn('update_at', 'timestamp');
    }
}
```

Now let's create a User model that extends Entity:

Listing  
14-3

```
// models/User.php

class User extends Entity
```



```
{ }
```

Do the same thing for the Group model:

```
// models/Group.php

class Group extends Entity
{ }
```

*Listing  
14-4*

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

```
# schema.yml

# ...
Entity:
  columns:
    username: string(20)
    password: string(16)
    created_at: timestamp
    updated_at: timestamp

User:
  inheritance:
    extends: Entity
    type: column_aggregation
    keyField: type
    keyValue: 1

Group:
  inheritance:
    extends: Entity
    type: column_aggregation
    keyField: type
    keyValue: 2
  columns:
    name: string(30)
```

*Listing  
14-5*

Lets check the SQL that is generated by the above models:

```
// test.php

// ...
$sql = Doctrine::generateSqlFromArray(array('Entity', 'User', 'Group'));
echo $sql[0];
```

*Listing  
14-6*

The above code would output the following SQL query:

```
CREATE TABLE entity (id BIGINT AUTO_INCREMENT,
username VARCHAR(20),
```

*Listing  
14-7*

```
password VARCHAR(16),
created_at DATETIME,
updated_at DATETIME,
type VARCHAR(255),
name VARCHAR(30),
PRIMARY KEY(id)) ENGINE = INNODB
```



When using YAML schema files you are able to define columns in the child classes but when the YAML is parsed the columns are moved to the parent for you automatically. This is only a convenience to you so that you can organize your columns easier.

## Concrete

Concrete inheritance creates separate tables for child classes. However in concrete inheritance each class generates a table which contains all columns (including inherited columns). In order to use concrete inheritance you'll need to add explicit `parent::setTableDefinition()` calls to child classes as shown below.

Listing  
14-8

```
// models/TextItem.php

class TextItem extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('topic', 'string', 100);
    }
}
```

Now lets create a model named `Comment` that extends `TextItem` and add an extra column named `content`:

Listing  
14-9

```
// models/Comment.php

class Comment extends TextItem
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        parent::setTableDefinition();

        $this->hasColumn('content', 'string', 300);
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

Listing  
14-10

```
# schema.yml

# ...
```

```

TextItem:
  columns:
    topic: string(100)

Comment:
  inheritance:
    extends: TextItem
    type: concrete
  columns:
    content: string(300)

```

Lets check the SQL that is generated by the above models:

*Listing  
14-11*

```

// test.php

// ...
$sql = Doctrine::generateSqlFromArray(array('TextItem', 'Comment'));
echo $sql[0] . "\n";
echo $sql[1];

```

The above code would output the following SQL query:

*Listing  
14-12*

```

CREATE TABLE text_item (id BIGINT AUTO_INCREMENT,
topic VARCHAR(100),
PRIMARY KEY(id)) ENGINE = INNODB
CREATE TABLE comment (id BIGINT AUTO_INCREMENT,
topic VARCHAR(100),
content TEXT,
PRIMARY KEY(id)) ENGINE = INNODB

```

In concrete inheritance you don't necessarily have to define additional columns, but in order to make Doctrine create separate tables for each class you'll have to make iterative `setTableDefinition()` calls.

In the following example we have three database tables called `entity`, `user` and `group`. Users and groups are both entities. The only thing we have to do is write 3 classes (`Entity`, `Group` and `User`) and make iterative `setTableDefinition()` method calls.

*Listing  
14-13*

```

// models/Entity.php

class Entity extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('name', 'string', 30);
        $this->hasColumn('username', 'string', 20);
        $this->hasColumn('password', 'string', 16);
        $this->hasColumn('created', 'integer', 11);
    }
}

// models/User.php

class User extends Entity

```

```

{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        // the following method call is needed in
        // concrete inheritance
        parent::setTableDefinition();
    }
}

// models/Group.php
class Group extends Entity
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        // the following method call is needed in
        // concrete inheritance
        parent::setTableDefinition();
    }
}

```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

Listing  
14-14

```

Entity:
  columns:
    name: string(30)
    username: string(20)
    password: string(16)
    created: integer(11)

User:
  inheritance:
    extends: Entity
    type: concrete

Group:
  tableName: groups
  inheritance:
    extends: Entity
    type: concrete

```

Lets check the SQL that is generated by the above models:

Listing  
14-15

```

// test.php

// ...
$sql = Doctrine::generateSqlFromArray(array('Entity', 'User', 'Group'));
echo $sql[0] . "\n";
echo $sql[1] . "\n";
echo $sql[2] . "\n";

```

The above code would output the following SQL query:

```

CREATE TABLE user (id BIGINT AUTO_INCREMENT,
name VARCHAR(30),
username VARCHAR(20),
password VARCHAR(16),
created BIGINT,
PRIMARY KEY(id)) ENGINE = INNODB
CREATE TABLE groups (id BIGINT AUTO_INCREMENT,
name VARCHAR(30),
username VARCHAR(20),
password VARCHAR(16),
created BIGINT,
PRIMARY KEY(id)) ENGINE = INNODB
CREATE TABLE entity (id BIGINT AUTO_INCREMENT,
name VARCHAR(30),
username VARCHAR(20),
password VARCHAR(16),
created BIGINT,
PRIMARY KEY(id)) ENGINE = INNODB

```

*Listing  
14-16*

## Column Aggregation

In the following example we have one database table called `entity`. Users and groups are both entities and they share the same database table.

The `entity` table has a column called `type` which tells whether an entity is a group or a user. Then we decide that users are type 1 and groups type 2.

The only thing we have to do is to create 3 records (the same as before) and add the call to the `Doctrine_Table::setSubclasses()` method from the parent class.

```

// models/Entity.php

class Entity extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('name', 'string', 30);
        $this->hasColumn('username', 'string', 20);
        $this->hasColumn('password', 'string', 16);
        $this->hasColumn('created_at', 'timestamp');
        $this->hasColumn('update_at', 'timestamp');

        $this->setSubclasses(array(
            'User' => array('type' => 1),
            'Group' => array('type' => 2)
        ));
    }
}

// models/User.php
class User extends Entity
{ }

// models/Group.php
class Group extends Entity

```

*Listing  
14-17*

```
{ }
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

*Listing 14-18*

```
Entity:
  columns:
    username: string(20)
    password: string(16)
    created_at: timestamp
    updated_at: timestamp

User:
  inheritance:
    extends: Entity
    type: column_aggregation
    keyField: type
    keyValue: 1

Group:
  inheritance:
    extends: Entity
    type: column_aggregation
    keyField: type
    keyValue: 2
```

Lets check the SQL that is generated by the above models:

*Listing 14-19*

```
// test.php

// ...
$sql = Doctrine::generateSqlFromArray(array('Entity', 'User', 'Group'));
echo $sql[0];
```

The above code would output the following SQL query:

*Listing 14-20*

```
CREATE TABLE entity (id BIGINT AUTO_INCREMENT,
username VARCHAR(20),
password VARCHAR(16),
created_at DATETIME,
updated_at DATETIME,
type VARCHAR(255),
PRIMARY KEY(id)) ENGINE = INNODB
```



Notice how the `type` column was automatically added. This is how column aggregation inheritance knows which model each record in the database belongs to.

---

This feature also enable us to query the `Entity` table and get a `User` or `Group` object back if the returned object matches the constraints set in the parent class.

See the code example below for an example of this. First lets save a new `User` object:

*Listing  
14-21*

```
// test.php

// ...
$user = new User();
$user->name = 'Bjarte S. Karlsen';
$user->username = 'meus';
$user->password = 'rat';
$user->save();
```

Now lets save a new Group object:

*Listing  
14-22*

```
// test.php

// ...
$group = new Group();
$group->name = 'Users';
$group->username = 'users';
$group->password = 'password';
$group->save();
```

Now if we query the Entity model for the id of the User we created, the Doctrine\_Query will return an instance of User.

*Listing  
14-23*

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->from('Entity e')
    ->where('e.id = ?');

$user = $q->fetchOne(array($user->id));

echo get_class86($user); // User
```

If we do the same thing as above but for the Group record, it will return an instance of Group.

*Listing  
14-24*

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->from('Entity e')
    ->where('e.id = ?');

$group = $q->fetchOne(array($group->id));
```

---

86. [http://www.php.net/function.get\\_class](http://www.php.net/function.get_class)

```
echo get_class87($group); // Group
```



The above is possible because of the `type` column. Doctrine knows which class each record was created by, so when data is being hydrated it can be hydrated in to the appropriate sub-class.

---

We can also query the individual `User` or `Group` models:

*Listing  
14-25*

```
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('u.id')
    ->from('User u');

echo $q->getSql();
```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

*Listing  
14-26*

```
SELECT
e.id AS e__id
FROM entity e
WHERE (e.type = '1')
```



Notice how the `type` condition was automatically added to the query so that it will only return records that are of type `User`.

---

## Conclusion

Now that we've learned about how to take advantage of PHP's inheritance features with our models we can move on to learning about Doctrine Behaviors. This is one of the most sophisticated and useful features in Doctrine for accomplishing complex models with small and easy to maintain code.

---

87. [http://www.php.net/function.get\\_class](http://www.php.net/function.get_class)



## Chapter 15

# Behaviors

## Introduction

Many times you may find classes having similar things within your models. These things may contain anything related to the schema of the component itself (relations, column definitions, index definitions etc.). One obvious way of re-factoring the code is having a base class with some classes extending it.

However inheritance solves only a fraction of things. The following sections show how using `Doctrine_Template` is much more powerful and flexible than using inheritance.

`Doctrine_Template` is a class template system. Templates are basically ready-to-use little components that your Record classes can load. When a template is being loaded its `setTableDefinition()` and `setUp()` methods are being invoked and the method calls inside them are being directed into the class in question.

This chapter describes the usage of various behaviors available for Doctrine. You'll also learn how to create your own behaviors. In order to grasp the concepts of this chapter you should be familiar with the theory behind `Doctrine_Template` and `Doctrine_Record_Generator`. We will explain what these classes are shortly.

When referring to behaviors we refer to class packages that use templates, generators and listeners extensively. All the introduced components in this chapter can be considered **core** behaviors, that means they reside at the Doctrine main repository.

Usually behaviors use generators side-to-side with template classes (classes that extend `Doctrine_Template`). The common workflow is:

- A new template is being initialized
- The template creates the generator and calls `initialize()` method
- The template is attached to given class

As you may already know templates are used for adding common definitions and options to record classes. The purpose of generators is much more complex. Usually they are being used for creating generic record classes dynamically. The definitions of these generic classes usually depend on the owner class. For example the columns of the `AuditLog` versioning class are the columns of the parent class with all the sequence and autoincrement definitions removed.

## Simple Templates

In the following example we define a template called `TimestampBehavior`. Basically the purpose of this template is to add date columns 'created' and 'updated' to the record class that loads this template. Additionally this template uses a listener called `Timestamp listener` which updates these fields based on record actions.

Listing  
15-1

```
// models/TimestampListener.php

class TimestampListener extends Doctrine_Record_Listener
{
    public function preInsert(Doctrine_Event $event)
    {
        $event->getInvoker()->created = date88('Y-m-d', time89());
        $event->getInvoker()->updated = date90('Y-m-d', time91());
    }

    public function preUpdate(Doctrine_Event $event)
    {
        $event->getInvoker()->updated = date92('Y-m-d', time93());
    }
}
```

Now lets create a child `Doctrine_Template` named `TimestampTemplate` so we can attach it to our models with the `actAs()` method:

Listing  
15-2

```
// models/TimestampBehavior.php

class TimestampTemplate extends Doctrine_Template
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('created', 'date');
        $this->hasColumn('updated', 'date');

        $this->setListener(new TimestampListener());
    }
}
```

Lets say we have a class called `BlogPost` that needs the timestamp functionality. All we need to do is to add `actAs()` call in the class definition.

Listing  
15-3

```
class BlogPost extends Doctrine_Record
{
```

---

88. <http://www.php.net/function.date>  
 89. <http://www.php.net/function.time>  
 90. <http://www.php.net/function.date>  
 91. <http://www.php.net/function.time>  
 92. <http://www.php.net/function.date>  
 93. <http://www.php.net/function.time>

```

    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('title', 'string', 200);
        $this->hasColumn('body', 'clob');
    }

    public function setUp()
    {
        $this->actAs('TimestampBehavior');
    }
}

```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

```

BlogPost:
  actAs: [TimestampBehavior]
  columns:
    title: string(200)
    body: clob

```

*Listing  
15-4*

Now when we try and utilize the `BlogPost` model you will notice that the `created` and `updated` columns were added for you and automatically set when saved:

```

$blogPost = new BlogPost();
$blogPost->title = 'Test';
$blogPost->body = 'test';
$blogPost->save();

print_r94($blogPost->toArray());

```

*Listing  
15-5*

The above example would produce the following output:

```

$ php test.php
Array
(
    [id] => 1
    [title] => Test
    [body] => test
    [created] => 2009-01-22
    [updated] => 2009-01-22
)

```

*Listing  
15-6*



The above described functionality is available via the `Timestampable` behavior that we have already talked about. You can go back and read more about it in the [Timestampable](#) section of this chapter.

---

94. [http://www.php.net/function.print\\_r](http://www.php.net/function.print_r)

## Templates with Relations

Many times the situations tend to be much more complex than the situation in the previous chapter. You may have model classes with relations to other model classes and you may want to replace given class with some extended class.

Consider we have two classes, `User` and `Email`, with the following definitions:

*Listing  
15-7*

```
class User extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('username', 'string', 255);
        $this->hasColumn('password', 'string', 255);
    }

    public function setUp()
    {
        $this->hasMany('Email', array(
            'local' => 'id',
            'foreign' => 'user_id'
        ));
    }
}

class Email extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('address', 'string');
        $this->hasColumn('user_id', 'integer');
    }

    public function setUp()
    {
        $this->hasOne('User', array(
            'local' => 'user_id',
            'foreign' => 'id'
        ));
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

*Listing  
15-8*

```
User:
  columns:
    username: string(255)
    password: string(255)

Email:
  columns:
    address: string
```

```

    user_id: integer
  relations:
    User:

```

Now if we extend the `User` and `Email` classes and create, for example, classes `ExtendedUser` and `ExtendedEmail`, the `ExtendedUser` will still have a relation to the `Email` class and not the `ExtendedEmail` class. We could of course override the `setUp()` method of the `User` class and define relation to the `ExtendedEmail` class, but then we lose the whole point of inheritance. `Doctrine_Template` can solve this problem elegantly with its dependency injection solution.

In the following example we'll define two templates, `UserTemplate` and `EmailTemplate`, with almost identical definitions as the `User` and `Email` class had.

*Listing  
15-9*

```

// models/UserTemplate.php

class UserTemplate extends Doctrine_Template
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('username', 'string', 255);
        $this->hasColumn('password', 'string', 255);
    }

    public function setUp()
    {
        $this->hasMany('EmailTemplate as Emails', array(
            'local' => 'id',
            'foreign' => 'user_id'
        ));
    }
}

```

Now lets define the `EmailTemplate`:

*Listing  
15-10*

```

// models/EmailTemplate.php

class EmailTemplate extends Doctrine_Template
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('address', 'string');
        $this->hasColumn('user_id', 'integer');
    }

    public function setUp()
    {
        $this->hasOne('UserTemplate as User', array(
            'local' => 'user_id',
            'foreign' => 'id'
        ));
    }
}

```

```
}
```

Notice how we set the relations. We are not pointing to concrete Record classes, rather we are setting the relations to templates. This tells Doctrine that it should try to find concrete Record classes for those templates. If Doctrine can't find these concrete implementations the relation parser will throw an exception, but before we go ahead of things, here are the actual record classes:

Listing  
15-11

```
class User extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setUp()
    {
        $this->actAs('UserTemplate');
    }
}

class Email extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setUp()
    {
        $this->actAs('EmailTemplate');
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

Listing  
15-12

```
User:
  actAs: [UserTemplate]

Email:
  actAs: [EmailTemplate]
```

Now consider the following code snippet. This does NOT work since we haven't yet set any concrete implementations for the templates.

Listing  
15-13

```
// test.php

// ...
$user = new User();
$user->Emails; // throws an exception
```

The following version works. Notice how we set the concrete implementations for the templates globally using `Doctrine_Manager`:

Listing  
15-14

```
// bootstrap.php

// ...
```

```
$manager->setImpl('UserTemplate', 'User')
    ->setImpl('EmailTemplate', 'Email');
```

Now this code will work and won't throw an exception like it did before:

```
$user = new User();
$user->Emails[0]->address = 'jonwage@gmail.com';
$user->save();

print_r95($user->toArray(true));
```

*Listing  
15-15*

The above example would produce the following output:

```
$ php test.php
Array
(
    [id] => 1
    [username] =>
    [password] =>
    [Emails] => Array
        (
            [0] => Array
                (
                    [id] => 1
                    [address] => jonwage@gmail.com
                    [user_id] => 1
                )
        )
)
```

*Listing  
15-16*



The implementations for the templates can be set at manager, connection and even at the table level.

---

## Delegate Methods

Besides from acting as a full table definition delegate system, `Doctrine_Template` allows the delegation of method calls. This means that every method within the loaded templates is available in the record that loaded the templates. Internally the implementation uses magic method called `__call()` to achieve this functionality.

Lets add to our previous example and add some custom methods to the `UserTemplate`:

```
// models/UserTemplate.php

class UserTemplate extends Doctrine_Template
```

*Listing  
15-17*

---

<sup>95</sup>. [http://www.php.net/function.print\\_r](http://www.php.net/function.print_r)

```

{
    // ...

    public function authenticate($username, $password)
    {
        $invoker = $this->getInvoker();
        if ($invoker->username == $username && $invoker->password == $password) {
            return true;
        } else {
            return false;
        }
    }
}

```

Now take a look at the following code and how we can use it:

Listing  
15-18

```

$user = new User();
$user->username = 'jwage';
$user->password = 'changeme';

if ($user->authenticate('jwage', 'changeme')) {
    echo 'Authenticated successfully!';
} else {
    echo 'Could not authenticate user!';
}

```

You can also delegate methods to `Doctrine_Table` classes just as easily. But, to avoid naming collisions the methods for table classes must have the string `TableProxy` appended to the end of the method name.

Here is an example where we add a new finder method:

Listing  
15-19

```

// models/UserTemplate.php

class UserTemplate extends Doctrine_Template
{
    // ...

    public function findUsersWithEmailTableProxy()
    {
        return Doctrine_Query::create()
            ->select('u.username')
            ->from('User u')
            ->innerJoin('u.Emails e')
            ->execute();
    }
}

```

Now we can access that function from the `Doctrine_Table` object for the User model:



Listing  
15-20

```
$userTable = Doctrine::getTable('User');

$users = $userTable->findUsersWithEmail();
```



Each class can consists of multiple templates. If the templates contain similar definitions the most recently loaded template always overrides the former.

## Creating Behaviors

This subchapter provides you the means for creating your own behaviors. Lets say we have various different Record classes that need to have one-to-many emails. We achieve this functionality by creating a generic behavior which creates Email classes on the fly.

We start this task by creating a behavior called `EmailBehavior` with a `setTableDefinition()` method. Inside the `setTableDefinition()` method various helper methods can be used for easily creating the dynamic record definition. Commonly the following methods are being used:

Listing  
15-21

```
public function initOptions()
public function buildLocalRelation()
public function buildForeignKeys(Doctrine_Table $table)
public function buildForeignRelation($alias = null)
public function buildRelation() // calls buildForeignRelation() and
buildLocalRelation()
```

Listing  
15-22

```
class EmailBehavior extends Doctrine_Record_Generator
{
    public function initOptions()
    {
        $this->setOption('className', '%CLASS%Email');
    }

    public function buildRelation()
    {
        $this->buildForeignRelation('Emails');
        $this->buildLocalRelation();
    }

    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('address', 'string', 255, array(
            'email' => true,
            'primary' => true
        ));
    }
}
```

## Core Behaviors



For the next several examples using the core behaviors lets delete all our existing schemas and models from our test environment we created and have been using in the earlier chapters.

Listing  
15-23

```
$ rm schema.yml
$ touch schema.yml
$ rm -rf models/*
```

### Introduction

Doctrine comes bundled with some templates that offer out of the box functionality for your models. You can enable these templates in your models very easily. You can do it directly in your `Doctrine_Records` or you can specify them in your YAML schema if you are managing your models with YAML.

In the next several examples we will demonstrate some of the behaviors that come bundled with Doctrine.

### Versionable

Lets create a `BlogPost` model that we want to have the ability to have versions:

Listing  
15-24

```
// models/BlogPost.php

class BlogPost extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('title', 'string', 255);
        $this->hasColumn('body', 'clob');
    }

    public function setUp()
    {
        $this->actAs('Versionable', array(
            'versionColumn' => 'version',
            'className' => '%CLASS%Version',
            'auditLog' => true
        ));
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

```

BlogPost:
  actAs:
    Versionable:
      versionColumn: version
      className: %CLASS%Version
      auditLog: true
  columns:
    title: string(255)
    body: clob

```

*Listing  
15-25*



The `auditLog` option can be used to turn off the audit log history. This is when you want to maintain a version number but not maintain the data at each version.

Lets check the SQL that is generated by the above models:

```

// test.php

// ...
$sql = Doctrine::generateSqlFromArray(array('BlogPost'));
echo $sql[0] . "\n";
echo $sql[1];

```

*Listing  
15-26*

The above code would output the following SQL query:

```

CREATE TABLE blog_post_version (id BIGINT,
title VARCHAR(255),
body LONGTEXT,
version BIGINT,
PRIMARY KEY(id,
version)) ENGINE = INNODB
CREATE TABLE blog_post (id BIGINT AUTO_INCREMENT,
title VARCHAR(255),
body LONGTEXT,
version BIGINT,
PRIMARY KEY(id)) ENGINE = INNODB
ALTER TABLE blog_post_version ADD FOREIGN KEY (id) REFERENCES blog_post(id)
ON UPDATE CASCADE ON DELETE CASCADE

```

*Listing  
15-27*



Notice how we have 2 additional statements we probably didn't expect to see. The behavior automatically created a `blog_post_version` table and related it to `blog_post`.

Now when we insert or update a `BlogPost` the version table will store all the old versions of the record and allow you to revert back at anytime. When you instantiate a `NewItem` for the first time this is what is happening internally:

- It creates a class called `BlogPostVersion` on-the-fly, the table this record is pointing at is `blog_post_version`
- Everytime a `BlogPost` object is deleted / updated the previous version is stored into `blog_post_version`
- Everytime a `BlogPost` object is updated its version number is increased.

Now lets play around with the `BlogPost` model:

Listing  
15-28

```
$blogPost = new BlogPost();
$blogPost->title = 'Test blog post';
$blogPost->body = 'test';
$blogPost->save();

$blogPost->title = 'Modified blog post title';
$blogPost->save();

print_r96($blogPost->toArray());
```

The above example would produce the following output:

Listing  
15-29

```
$ php test.php
Array
(
    [id] => 1
    [title] => Modified blog post title
    [body] => test
    [version] => 2
)
```



Notice how the value of the `version` column is 2. This is because we have saved 2 versions of the `BlogPost` model. We can easily revert to another version by using the `revert()` method that the behavior includes.

---

Lets revert back to the first version:

Listing  
15-30

```
$blogPost->revert(1);
print_r97($blogPost->toArray());
```

The above example would produce the following output:

Listing  
15-31

```
$ php test.php
Array
(
    [id] => 2
    [title] => Test blog post
    [body] => test
    [version] => 1
)
```



Notice how the value of the `version` column is set to 1 and the `title` is back to the original value was set it to when creating the `BlogPost`.

---



---

96. [http://www.php.net/function.print\\_r](http://www.php.net/function.print_r)

97. [http://www.php.net/function.print\\_r](http://www.php.net/function.print_r)

## Timestampable

The Timestampable behavior will automatically add a `created_at` and `updated_at` column and automatically set the values when a record is inserted and updated.

Since it is common to want to know the date a post is made etc expand our `BlogPost` model and add the `Timestampable` behavior to automatically set these dates for us.

*Listing  
15-32*

```
// models/BlogPost.php

class BlogPost extends Doctrine_Record
{
    // ...

    public function setUp()
    {
        $this->actAs('Timestampable');
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

*Listing  
15-33*

```
# schema.yml

# ...
BlogPost:
  actAs:
# ...
    Timestampable:
# ...
```

If you are only interested in using only one of the columns, such as a `created_at` timestamp, but not a `updated_at` field, set the `disabled` to true for either of the fields as in the example below.

*Listing  
15-34*

```
BlogPost:
  actAs:
# ...
    Timestampable:
      created:
        name: created_at
        type: timestamp
        format: Y-m-d H
      updated:
        disabled: true
# ...
```

Now look what happens when we create a new post:

*Listing  
15-35*

```
$blogPost = new BlogPost();
$blogPost->title = 'Test blog post';
$blogPost->body = 'test';
$blogPost->save();
```

```
print_r98($blogPost->toArray());
```

The above example would produce the following output:

*Listing 15-36*

```
$ php test.php
Array
(
    [id] => 1
    [title] => Test blog post
    [body] => test
    [version] => 1
    [created_at] => 2009-01-21 17:54:23
    [updated_at] => 2009-01-21 17:54:23
)
```



Look how the `created_at` and `updated_at` values were automatically set for you!

Here is a list of all the options you can use with the `Timestampable` behavior on the created side of the behavior:

Name	Default	Description
name	<code>created_at</code>	The name of the column.
type	<code>timestamp</code>	The column type.
options	<code>array()</code>	Any additional options for the column.
format	<code>Y-m-d H:i:s</code>	
disabled	<code>false</code>	Whether or not to disable the created date.
expression	<code>NOW()</code>	Expression to use to set the column value.

Here is a list of all the options you can use with the `Timestampable` behavior on the updated side of the behavior that are not possible on the created side:

Name	Default	Description
onInsert	<code>true</code>	Whether or not to set the updated date when the record is first inserted.

## Sluggable

The `Sluggable` behavior is a nice piece of functionality that will automatically add a column to your model for storing a unique human readable identifier that can be created from columns like `title`, `subject`, etc. These values can be used for search engine friendly urls.

Lets expand our `BlogPost` model to use the `Sluggable` behavior because we will want to have nice URLs for our posts:

*Listing 15-37*

```
// models/BlogPost.php
```

```
class BlogPost extends Doctrine_Record
```

<sup>98</sup>. [http://www.php.net/function.print\\_r](http://www.php.net/function.print_r)

```

{
  // ...

  public function setUp()
  {
    // ...

    $this->actAs('Sluggable', array(
      'unique'    => true,
      'fields'    => array('username'),
      'canUpdate' => true
    ));
  }
}

```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

```
# schema.yml
```

*Listing  
15-38*

```

# ...
BlogPost:
  actAs:
# ...
  Sluggable:
    unique: true
    fields: [title]
    canUpdate: true
# ...

```

Now look what happens when we create a new post. The slug column will automatically be set for us:

```

$blogPost = new BlogPost();
$blogPost->title = 'Test blog post';
$blogPost->body = 'test';
$blogPost->save();

print_r99($blogPost->toArray());

```

*Listing  
15-39*

The above example would produce the following output:

```

$ php test.php
Array
(
    [id] => 1
    [title] => Test blog post
    [body] => test
    [version] => 1
    [created_at] => 2009-01-21 17:57:05

```

*Listing  
15-40*

---

99. [http://www.php.net/function.print\\_r](http://www.php.net/function.print_r)

```
[updated_at] => 2009-01-21 17:57:05
[slug] => test-blog-post
)
```



Notice how the value of the `slug` column was automatically set based on the value of the `title` column. When a slug is created, by default it is `urlized` which means all non-url-friendly characters are removed and white space is replaced with hyphens(-).

The `unique` flag will enforce that the slug created is unique. If it is not unique an auto incremented integer will be appended to the slug before saving to database.

The `canUpdate` flag will allow the users to manually set the slug value to be used when building the url friendly slug.

Here is a list of all the options you can use on the `Sluggable` behavior:

Name	Default	Description
<code>name</code>	<code>slug</code>	The name of the slug column.
<code>alias</code>	<code>null</code>	The alias of the slug column.
<code>type</code>	<code>string</code>	The type of the slug column.
<code>length</code>	<code>255</code>	The length of the slug column.
<code>unique</code>	<code>true</code>	Whether or not unique slug values are enforced.
<code>options</code>	<code>array()</code>	Any other options for the slug column.
<code>fields</code>	<code>array()</code>	The fields that are used to build slug value.
<code>uniqueBy</code>	<code>array()</code>	The fields that make determine a unique slug.
<code>uniqueIndex</code>	<code>true</code>	Whether or not to create a unique index.
<code>canUpdate</code>	<code>false</code>	Whether or not the slug can be updated.
<code>builder</code>	<code>array('Doctrine_Inflector', 'urlize')</code>	The <code>Class::method()</code> used to build the slug.
<code>indexName</code>	<code>sluggable</code>	The name of the index to create.

## I18n

`Doctrine_I18n` package is a behavior for Doctrine that provides internationalization support for record classes. In the following example we have a `NewsItem` class with two fields `title` and `content`. We want to have the field `title` with different languages support. This can be achieved as follows:

Listing  
15-41

```
class NewsItem extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('title', 'string', 255);
        $this->hasColumn('body', 'blog');
    }

    public function setUp()
    {
        $this->actAs('I18n', array(
```



```

        'fields' => array('title', 'body')
    )
    );
}
}

```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

```

NewsItem:
  actAs:
    I18n:
      fields: [title, body]
  columns:
    title: string(255)
    body: clob

```

*Listing  
15-42*

Below is a list of all the options you can use with the I18n behavior:

Name	Default	Description
className	%CLASS%Translation	The name pattern to use for generated class.
fields	array()	The fields to internationalize.
type	string	The type of lang column.
length	2	The length of the lang column.
options	array()	Other options for the lang column.

Lets check the SQL that is generated by the above models:

```

// test.php

// ...
$sql = Doctrine::generateSqlFromArray(array('NewsItem'));
echo $sql[0] . "\n";
echo $sql[1];

```

*Listing  
15-43*

The above code would output the following SQL query:

```

CREATE TABLE news_item_translation (id BIGINT,
title VARCHAR(255),
body LONGTEXT,
lang CHAR(2),
PRIMARY KEY(id,
lang)) ENGINE = INNODB
CREATE TABLE news_item (id BIGINT AUTO_INCREMENT,
PRIMARY KEY(id)) ENGINE = INNODB

```

*Listing  
15-44*



Notice how the field `title` is not present in the `news_item` table. Since its present in the translation table it would be a waste of resources to have that same field in the main table. Basically Doctrine always automatically removes all translated fields from the main table.

Now the first time you initialize a new `NewItem` record Doctrine initializes the behavior that builds the followings things:

1. Record class called `NewItemTranslation`
2. Bi-directional relations between `NewItemTranslation` and `NewItem`

Lets take a look at how we can manipulate the translations of the `NewItem`:

Listing  
15-45

```
// test.php

// ...
$newsItem = new NewItem();
$newsItem->Translation['en']->title = 'some title';
$newsItem->Translation['en']->body = 'test';
$newsItem->Translation['fi']->title = 'joku otsikko';
$newsItem->Translation['fi']->body = 'test';
$newsItem->save();

print_r100($newsItem->toArray());
```

The above example would produce the following output:

Listing  
15-46

```
$ php test.php
Array
(
    [id] => 1
    [Translation] => Array
        (
            [en] => Array
                (
                    [id] => 1
                    [title] => some title
                    [body] => test
                    [lang] => en
                )
            [fi] => Array
                (
                    [id] => 1
                    [title] => joku otsikko
                    [body] => test
                    [lang] => fi
                )
        )
)
```

How do we retrieve the translated data now? This is easy! Lets find all items and their finnish translations:

Listing  
15-47

```
// test.php

// ...
```

---

<sup>100</sup>. [http://www.php.net/function.print\\_r](http://www.php.net/function.print_r)

```
$newsItems = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->from('NewsItem n')
    ->leftJoin('n.Translation t')
    ->where('t.lang = ?')
    ->execute(array('fi'));

echo $newsItems[0]->Translation['fi']->title;
```

The above example would produce the following output:

```
$ php test.php
joku otsikko
```

*Listing  
15-48*

## NestedSet

The `NestedSet` behavior allows you to turn your models in to a nested set tree structure where the entire tree structure can be retrieved in one efficient query. It also provided a nice interface for manipulating the data in your trees.

Lets take a `Category` model for example where the categories need to be organized in a hierarchical tree structure:

```
// models/Category.php

class Category extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('name', 'string', 255);
    }

    public function setUp()
    {
        $this->actAs('NestedSet', array(
            'hasManyRoots' => true,
            'rootColumnName' => 'root_id'
        ));
    }
}
```

*Listing  
15-49*

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

```
# schema.yml

# ...
Category:
  actAs:
    NestedSet:
      hasManyRoots: true
      rootColumnName: root_id
```

*Listing  
15-50*

```
columns:
    name: string(255)
```

Lets check the SQL that is generated by the above models:

Listing  
15-51

```
// test.php

// ...
$sql = Doctrine::generateSqlFromArray(array('Category'));
echo $sql[0];
```

The above code would output the following SQL query:

Listing  
15-52

```
CREATE TABLE category (id BIGINT AUTO_INCREMENT,
name VARCHAR(255),
root_id INT,
lft INT,
rgt INT,
level SMALLINT,
PRIMARY KEY(id)) ENGINE = INNODB
```



Notice how the `root_id`, `lft`, `rgt` and `level` columns are automatically added. These columns are used to organize the tree structure and are handled automatically for you internally.

---

We won't discuss the `NestedSet` behavior in 100% detail here. It is a very large behavior so it has its own dedicated chapter.

## Searchable

The `Searchable` behavior is a fulltext indexing and searching tool. It can be used for indexing and searching both database and files.

Imagine we have a `Job` model for job postings and we want it to be easily searchable:

Listing  
15-53

```
// models/Job.php

class Job extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('title', 'string', 255);
        $this->hasColumn('description', 'clob');
    }

    public function setUp()
    {
        $this->actAs('Searchable', array(
            'fields' => array('title', 'content')
        ));
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

```
Job:
  actAs:
    Searchable:
      fields: [title, description]
  columns:
    title: string(255)
    description: clob
```

*Listing  
15-54*

Lets check the SQL that is generated by the above models:

```
// test.php

// ...
$sql = Doctrine::generateSqlFromArray(array('Job'));
echo $sql[0] . "\n";
echo $sql[1] . "\n";
echo $sql[2];
```

*Listing  
15-55*

The above code would output the following SQL query:

```
CREATE TABLE job_index (id BIGINT,
keyword VARCHAR(200),
field VARCHAR(50),
position BIGINT,
PRIMARY KEY(id,
keyword,
field,
position)) ENGINE = INNODB
CREATE TABLE job (id BIGINT AUTO_INCREMENT,
title VARCHAR(255),
description LONGTEXT,
PRIMARY KEY(id)) ENGINE = INNODB
ALTER TABLE job_index ADD FOREIGN KEY (id) REFERENCES job(id) ON UPDATE
CASCADE ON DELETE CASCADE
```

*Listing  
15-56*



Notice how the `job_index` table is automatically created for you and a foreign key between `job` and `job_index` was automatically created.

---

Because the `Searchable` behavior is such a large topic, we have more information on this that can be found in the [Searching](#) chapter.

## Geographical

The below is only a demo. The geographical behavior can be used with any data record for determining the number of miles or kilometers between 2 records.

*Listing  
15-57*

```
// models/Zipcode.php

class Zipcode extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('zipcode', 'string', 255);
        $this->hasColumn('city', 'string', 255);
        $this->hasColumn('state', 'string', 2);
        $this->hasColumn('county', 'string', 255);
        $this->hasColumn('zip_class', 'string', 255);
    }

    public function setUp()
    {
        $this->actAs('Geographical');
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

*Listing 15-58*

```
# schema.yml

# ...
Zipcode:
  actAs: [Geographical]
  columns:
    zipcode: string(255)
    city: string(255)
    state: string(2)
    county: string(255)
    zip_class: string(255)
```

Lets check the SQL that is generated by the above models:

*Listing 15-59*

```
// test.php

// ...
$sql = Doctrine::generateSqlFromArray(array('Zipcode'));
echo $sql[0];
```

The above code would output the following SQL query:

*Listing 15-60*

```
CREATE TABLE zipcode (id BIGINT AUTO_INCREMENT,
zipcode VARCHAR(255),
city VARCHAR(255),
state VARCHAR(2),
county VARCHAR(255),
zip_class VARCHAR(255),
latitude DOUBLE,
```

```
longitude DOUBLE,
PRIMARY KEY(id)) ENGINE = INNODB
```



Notice how the geographical behavior automatically adds the `latitude` and `longitude` columns to the records used for calculating distance between two records. Below you will find some example usage.

First lets retrieve two different zipcode records:

*Listing  
15-61*

```
// test.php

// ...
$zipcode1 = Doctrine::getTable('Zipcode')->findOneByZipcode('37209');
$zipcode2 = Doctrine::getTable('Zipcode')->findOneByZipcode('37388');
```

Now we can get the distance between those two records by using the `getDistance()` method that the behavior provides:

*Listing  
15-62*

```
// test.php

// ...
echo $zipcode1->getDistance($zipcode2, $kilometers = false);
```



The 2nd argument of the `getDistance()` method is whether or not to return the distance in kilometers. The default is false.

Now lets get the 50 closest zipcodes that are not in the same city:

*Listing  
15-63*

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = $zipcode1->getDistanceQuery();

$q->orderBy('miles asc')
  ->addWhere($q->getRootAlias() . '.city != ?', $zipcode1->city)
  ->limit(50);

echo $q->getSql();
```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

```
SELECT
z.id AS z__id,
z.zipcode AS z__zipcode,
z.city AS z__city,
z.state AS z__state,
z.county AS z__county,
```

*Listing  
15-64*

```

z.zip_class AS z__zip_class,
z.latitude AS z__latitude,
z.longitude AS z__longitude,
((ACOS(SIN(* PI() / 180) * SIN(z.latitude * PI() / 180) + COS(* PI() /
180) * COS(z.latitude * PI() / 180) * COS((- z.longitude) * PI() / 180)) *
180 / PI()) * 60 * 1.1515) AS z__0,
((ACOS(SIN(* PI() / 180) * SIN(z.latitude * PI() / 180) + COS(* PI() /
180) * COS(z.latitude * PI() / 180) * COS((- z.longitude) * PI() / 180)) *
180 / PI()) * 60 * 1.1515 * 1.609344) AS z__1
FROM zipcode z
WHERE z.city != ?
ORDER BY z__0 asc
LIMIT 50

```



Notice how the above SQL query includes a bunch of SQL that we did not write. This was automatically added by the behavior to calculate the number of miles between records.

Now we can execute the query and use the calculated number of miles values:

Listing  
15-65

```

// test.php

// ...
$result = $q->execute();

foreach ($result as $zipcode) {
    echo $zipcode->city . " - " . $zipcode->miles . "<br/>";
    // You could also access $zipcode->kilometers
}

```

Get some sample zip code data to test this

[http://www.populardata.com/zip\\_codes.zip](http://www.populardata.com/zip_codes.zip)<sup>101</sup>

Download and import the csv file with the following function:

Listing  
15-66

```

// test.php

// ...
function parseCsvFile($file, $columnheadings = false, $delimiter = ',', $enclosure
= "\"")
{
    $row = 1;
    $rows = array();
    $handle = fopen102($file, 'r');

    while (($data = fgetcsv103($handle, 1000, $delimiter, $enclosure)) !== FALSE) {

        if (!$columnheadings == false) && ($row == 1)) {
            $headingTexts = $data;
        } elseif (!$columnheadings == false)) {

```

101. [http://www.populardata.com/zip\\_codes.zip](http://www.populardata.com/zip_codes.zip)

102. <http://www.php.net/function.fopen>

103. <http://www.php.net/function.fgetcsv>



```

        foreach ($data as $key => $value) {
            unset($data[$key]);
            $data[$headingTexts[$key]] = $value;
        }
        $rows[] = $data;
    } else {
        $rows[] = $data;
    }
    $row++;
}

fclose104($handle);
return $rows;
}

$array = parseCsvFile('zipcodes.csv', false);

foreach ($array as $key => $value) {
    $zipcode = new Zipcode();
    $zipcode->fromArray($value);
    $zipcode->save();
}

```

## SoftDelete

The `SoftDelete` behavior is a very simple yet highly desired model behavior which overrides the `delete()` functionality and adds a `deleted` column. When `delete()` is called, instead of deleting the record from the database, a delete flag is set to 1. Below is an example of how to create a model with the `SoftDelete` behavior being used.

*Listing  
15-67*

```

// models/SoftDeleteTest.php

class SoftDeleteTest extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('name', 'string', null, array(
            'primary' => true
        ));
    }

    public function setUp()
    {
        $this->actAs('SoftDelete');
    }
}

```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

<sup>104</sup>. <http://www.php.net/function.fclose>

*Listing 15-68*

```
# schema.yml

# ...
SoftDeleteTest:
  actAs: [SoftDelete]
  columns:
    name:
      type: string(255)
      primary: true
```

Lets check the SQL that is generated by the above models:

*Listing 15-69*

```
// test.php

// ...
$sql = Doctrine::generateSqlFromArray(array('SoftDeleteTest'));
echo $sql[0];
```

The above code would output the following SQL query:

*Listing 15-70*

```
CREATE TABLE soft_delete_test (name VARCHAR(255),
deleted TINYINT(1) DEFAULT '0' NOT NULL,
PRIMARY KEY(name)) ENGINE = INNODB
```

Now lets put the behavior in action.



You are required to enable DQL callbacks in order for all executed queries to have the dql callbacks executed on them. In the SoftDelete behavior they are used to filter the select statements to exclude all records where the deleted flag is set with an additional WHERE condition.

---

## Enable DQL Callbacks

*Listing 15-71*

```
// bootstrap.php

// ...
$manager->setAttribute(Doctrine::ATTR_USE_DQL_CALLBACKS, true);
```

Now save a new record so we can test the SoftDelete functionality:

*Listing 15-72*

```
// test.php

// ...
$record = new SoftDeleteTest();
$record->name = 'new record';
$record->save();
```

Now when we call delete() the deleted flag will be set to true:

Listing  
15-73

```
// test.php

// ...
$record->delete();

print_r105($record->toArray());
```

The above example would produce the following output:

Listing  
15-74

```
$ php test.php
Array
(
    [name] => new record
    [deleted] => 1
)
```

Also, when we query, any records where deleted is not null are excluded from the results:

Listing  
15-75

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->from('SoftDeleteTest t');

echo $q->getSql();
```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

Listing  
15-76

```
SELECT
s.name AS s__name,
s.deleted AS s__deleted
FROM soft_delete_test s
WHERE (s.deleted = ?
OR s.deleted IS NULL)
```



Notice how the where condition is automatically added to only return the records that have not been deleted.

---

Now if we execute the query:

Listing  
15-77

```
// test.php

// ...
$count = $q->count106();
echo $count;
```

---

<sup>105.</sup> [http://www.php.net/function.print\\_r](http://www.php.net/function.print_r)

<sup>106.</sup> <http://www.php.net/function.count>

The above would be echo 0 because it would exclude the record saved above because the delete flag was set.

## Nesting Behaviors

Below is an example of several behaviors to give a complete wiki database that is versionable, searchable, sluggable, and full I18n.

*Listing  
15-78*

```
class Wiki extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('title', 'string', 255);
        $this->hasColumn('content', 'string');
    }

    public function setUp()
    {
        $options = array('fields' => array('title', 'content'));
        $auditLog = new Doctrine_Template_Versionable($options);
        $search = new Doctrine_Template_Searchable($options);
        $slug = new Doctrine_Template_Sluggable(array(
            'fields' => array('title')
        ));
        $i18n = new Doctrine_Template_I18n($options);

        $i18n->addChild($auditLog)
            ->addChild($search)
            ->addChild($slug);

        $this->actAs($i18n);

        $this->actAs('Timestampable');
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

*Listing  
15-79*

```
WikiTest:
  actAs:
    I18n:
      fields: [title, content]
    actAs:
      Versionable:
        fields: [title, content]
      Searchable:
        fields: [title, content]
      Sluggable:
        fields: [title]
  columns:
```

```
title: string(255)
content: string
```



The above example of nesting behaviors is currently broken in Doctrine. We are working furiously to come up with a backwards compatible fix. We will announce when the fix is ready and update the documentation accordingly.

## Generating Files

By default with behaviors the classes which are generated are evaluated at run-time and no files containing the classes are ever written to disk. This can be changed with a configuration option. Below is an example of how to configure the `I18n` behavior to generate the classes and write them to files instead of evaluating them at run-time.

*Listing  
15-80*

```
class NewsArticle extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('title', 'string', 255);
        $this->hasColumn('body', 'string', 255);
        $this->hasColumn('author', 'string', 255);
    }

    public function setUp()
    {
        $this->actAs('I18n', array(
            'fields'          => array('title', 'body'),
            'generateFiles'   => true,
            'generatePath'    => '/path/to/generate'
        ));
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

*Listing  
15-81*

```
NewsArticle:
  actAs:
    I18n:
      fields: [title, body]
      generateFiles: true
      generatePath: /path/to/generate
  columns:
    title: string(255)
    body: string(255)
    author: string(255)
```

Now the behavior will generate a file instead of generating the code and using `eval()`<sup>107</sup> to evaluate it at runtime.

<sup>107</sup>. <http://www.php.net/eval>

## Querying Generated Classes

If you want to query the auto generated models you will need to make sure the model with the behavior attached is loaded and initialized. You can do this by using the static `Doctrine::initializeModels()` method.

For example if you want to query the translation table for a `BlogPost` model you will need to run the following code:

*Listing  
15-82*

```
Doctrine::initializeModels(array('BlogPost'));

$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->from('BlogPostTranslation t')
    ->where('t.id = ? AND t.lang = ?', array(1, 'en'));

$translations = $q->execute();
```



This is required because the behaviors are not instantiated until the model is instantiated for the first time. The above `initializeModels()` method instantiates the passed models and makes sure the information is properly loaded in to the array of loaded models.

---

## Conclusion

By now we should know a lot about Doctrine behaviors. We should know how to write our own for our models as well as how to use all the great behaviors that come bundled with Doctrine.

Now we are ready to move on to discuss the Searchable behavior in more detail in the Searching chapter. As it is a large topic we have devoted an entire chapter to it.

## Chapter 16

# Searching

## Introduction

Searching is a huge topic, hence an entire chapter has been devoted to a behavior called **Searchable**. It is a fulltext indexing and searching tool. It can be used for indexing and searching both database and files.

Consider we have a class called **NewsItem** with the following definition:

```
// models/NewsItem.php

class NewsItem extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('title', 'string', 255);
        $this->hasColumn('body', 'clob');
    }
}
```

*Listing  
16-1*

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

```
# schema.yml

# ...
NewsItem:
  columns:
    title: string(255)
    body: clob
```

*Listing  
16-2*

Now let's say we have an application where users are allowed to search for different news items, an obvious way to implement this would be building a form and based on that form's submitted values build DQL queries such as:

```
// test.php

// ...
```

*Listing  
16-3*

```
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->from('NewsItem i')
    ->where('n.title LIKE ? OR n.content LIKE ?');
```

As the application grows these kind of queries become very slow. For example when using the previous query with parameters '%framework%' and '%framework%' (this would be equivalent of 'find all news items whose title or content contains word 'framework') the database would have to traverse through each row in the table, which would naturally be very slow.

Doctrine solves this with its search component and inverse indexes. First lets alter our definition a bit:

Listing  
16-4

```
// models/NewsItem.php

class NewsItem extends Doctrine_Record
{
    // ...

    public function setUp()
    {
        $this->actAs('Searchable', array(
            'fields' => array('title', 'content')
        ));
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the YAML Schema Files chapter:

Listing  
16-5

```
# schema.yml

# ...
NewsItem:
  actAs:
    Searchable:
      fields: [title, content]
# ...
```

Lets check the SQL that is generated by the above models:

Listing  
16-6

```
// test.php

// ...
$sql = Doctrine::generateSqlFromArray(array('NewsItem'));
echo $sql[0] . "\n";
echo $sql[1] . "\n";
echo $sql[2];
```



The above code would output the following SQL query:

```
CREATE TABLE news_item_index (id BIGINT,
keyword VARCHAR(200),
field VARCHAR(50),
position BIGINT,
PRIMARY KEY(id,
keyword,
field,
position)) ENGINE = INNODB
CREATE TABLE news_item (id BIGINT AUTO_INCREMENT,
title VARCHAR(255),
body LONGTEXT,
PRIMARY KEY(id)) ENGINE = INNODB
ALTER TABLE news_item_index ADD FOREIGN KEY (id) REFERENCES news_item(id) ON
UPDATE CASCADE ON DELETE CASCADE
```

Listing  
16-7

Here we tell Doctrine that `NewsItem` class acts as searchable (internally Doctrine loads `Doctrine_Template_Searchable`) and fields `title` and `content` are marked as fulltext indexed fields. This means that every time a `NewsItem` is added or updated Doctrine will:

1. Update the inverse search index or
2. Add new pending entry to the inverse search index (sometimes it can be efficient to update the inverse search index in batches)

## Index structure

The structure of the inverse index Doctrine uses is the following:

[ (string) keyword] [ (string) field ] [ (integer) position ] [ (mixed) [foreign\_keys] ]

Column	Description
keyword	The keyword in the text that can be searched for.
field	The field where the keyword was found.
position	The position where the keyword was found.
[foreign_keys]	The foreign keys of the record being indexed.

In the `NewsItem` example the [foreign\_keys] would simply contain one field named `id` with foreign key references to `NewsItem(id)` and with `onDelete => CASCADE` constraint.

An example row in this table might look something like:

keyword	field	position	id
database	title	3	1

In this example the word `database` is the third word of the `title` field of `NewsItem` with `id` of 1.

## Index Building

Whenever a searchable record is being inserted into database Doctrine executes the index building procedure. This happens in the background as the procedure is being invoked by the search listener. The phases of this procedure are:

1. Analyze the text using a `Doctrine_Search_Analyzer` based class
2. Insert new rows into index table for all analyzed keywords

Sometimes you may not want to update the index table directly when new searchable entries are added. Rather you may want to batch update the index table in certain intervals. For disabling the direct update functionality you'll need to set the `batchUpdates` option to true when you attach the behavior:

Listing  
16-8

```
// models/NewsItem.php

class NewsItem extends Doctrine_Record
{
    // ...

    public function setUp()
    {
        $this->actAs('Searchable', array(
            'fields' => array('title', 'content')
            'batchUpdates' => true
        ));
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

Listing  
16-9

```
# schema.yml

# ...
NewsItem:
  actAs:
    Searchable:
      fields: [title, content]
      batchUpdates: true
# ...
```

The actual batch updating procedure can be invoked with the `batchUpdateIndex()` method. It takes two optional arguments: `limit` and `offset`. Limit can be used for limiting the number of batch indexed entries while the offset can be used for setting the first entry to start the indexing from.

First lets insert a new `NewsItem` records:

Listing  
16-10

```
// test.php

// ...
$newItem = new NewsItem();
$newItem->title = 'Test';
$newItem->body = 'test';
$newItem->save();
```



If you don't have batch updates enabled then the index will be automatically updated for you when you insert or update `NewsItem` records. If you do have batch updates enabled then you can perform the batch updates by using the following code:

```
// test.php

// ...
$newsItemTable = Doctrine::getTable('NewsItem');
$newsItemTable->batchUpdateIndex();
```

Listing  
16-11

## Text Analyzers

By default Doctrine uses `Doctrine_Search_Analyzer_Standard` for analyzing the text. This class performs the following things:

- Strips out stop-keywords (such as 'and', 'if' etc.) As many commonly used words such as 'and', 'if' etc. have no relevance for the search, they are being stripped out in order to keep the index size reasonable.
- Makes all keywords lowercased. When searching words 'database' and 'DataBase' are considered equal by the standard analyzer, hence the standard analyzer lowercases all keywords.
- Replaces all non alpha-numeric marks with whitespace. In normal text many keywords might contain non alpha-numeric chars after them, for example 'database.'. The standard analyzer strips these out so that 'database' matches 'database'.
- Replaces all quotation marks with empty strings so that "O'Connor" matches "oconnor"

You can write your own analyzer class by making a class that implements `Doctrine_Search_Analyzer_Interface`. Here is an example where we create an analyzer named `MyAnalyzer`:

```
// models/MyAnalyzer.php

class MyAnalyzer implements Doctrine_Search_Analyzer_Interface
{
    public function analyze($text)
    {
        $text = trim108($text);
        return $text;
    }
}
```

Listing  
16-12



The search analyzers must only contain one method named `analyze()` and it should return the modified inputted text to be indexed.

108. <http://www.php.net/function.trim>

This analyzer can then be applied to the search object as follows:

Listing  
16-13

```
// test.php

// ...
$newsItemTable = Doctrine::getTable('NewsItem');
$search = $newsItemTable
    ->getTemplate('Doctrine_Template_Searchable')
    ->getPlugin();

$search->setOption('analyzer', new MyAnalyzer());
```

## Query language

Doctrine\_Search provides a query language similar to Apache Lucene. The Doctrine\_Search\_Query converts human readable, easy-to-construct search queries to their complex DQL equivalents which are then converted to SQL like normal.

## Performing Searches

Here is a simple example to retrieve the record ids and relevance data.

Listing  
16-14

```
// test.php

// ...
$newsItemTable = Doctrine::getTable('NewsItem');

$results = $newsItemTable->search('test');
print_r109($results);
```

The above code executes the following query:

Listing  
16-15

```
SELECT
COUNT(keyword) AS relevance,
id
FROM article_index
WHERE id IN (SELECT
id
FROM article_index
WHERE keyword = ?)
AND id IN (SELECT
id
FROM article_index
WHERE keyword = ?)
GROUP BY id
ORDER BY relevance DESC
```

---

<sup>109.</sup> [http://www.php.net/function.print\\_r](http://www.php.net/function.print_r)

The output of the code above would be the following:

*Listing  
16-16*

```
$ php test.php
Array
(
    [0] => Array
        (
            [relevance] => 1
            [id] => 1
        )
)
```

Now you can use those results in another query to retrieve the actual `NewsItem` objects:

*Listing  
16-17*

```
// test.php

// ...
$ids = array();
foreach ($results as $result) {
    $ids[] = $result['id'];
}

$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->from('NewsItem i')
    ->whereIn('i.id', $ids);

$newsItems = $q->execute();

print_r110($newsItems->toArray());
```

The above example would produce the following output:

*Listing  
16-18*

```
$ php test.php
Array
(
    [0] => Array
        (
            [id] => 1
            [title] => Test
            [body] => test
        )
)
```

You can optionally pass the `search()` function a query object to modify with a where condition subquery to limit the results using the search index.

*Listing  
16-19*

```
// test.php
```

---

<sup>110</sup>. [http://www.php.net/function.print\\_r](http://www.php.net/function.print_r)

```
// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->from('NewsItem i');

$q = Doctrine::getTable('Article')
    ->search('test', $q);

echo $q->getSql();
```

The above call to `getSql()` would output the following SQL query:

*Listing 16-20*

```
SELECT
n.id AS n__id,
n.title AS n__title,
n.body AS n__body
FROM news_item n
WHERE n.id IN (SELECT
id
FROM news_item_index
WHERE keyword = ?
GROUP BY id)
```

Now we can execute the query and get the `NewsItem` objects:

*Listing 16-21*

```
// test.php

// ...
$newsItems = $q->execute();

print_r111($newsItems->toArray());
```

The above example would produce the following output:

*Listing 16-22*

```
$ php test.php
Array
(
    [0] => Array
        (
            [id] => 1
            [title] => Test
            [body] => test
        )
)
```

---

<sup>111.</sup> [http://www.php.net/function.print\\_r](http://www.php.net/function.print_r)

## File searches

As stated before `Doctrine_Search` can also be used for searching files. Lets say we have a directory which we want to be searchable. First we need to create an instance of `Doctrine_Search_File` which is a child of `Doctrine_Search` providing some extra functionality needed for the file searches.

*Listing  
16-23*

```
// test.php

// ...
$search = new Doctrine_Search_File();
```

Second thing to do is to generate the index table. By default Doctrine names the database index class as `FileIndex`.

Lets check the SQL that is generated by the above models created:

*Listing  
16-24*

```
// test.php

// ...
$sql = Doctrine::generateSqlFromArray(array('FileIndex'));
```

The above code would output the following SQL query:

*Listing  
16-25*

```
CREATE TABLE file_index (url VARCHAR(255),
keyword VARCHAR(200),
field VARCHAR(50),
position BIGINT,
PRIMARY KEY(url,
keyword,
field,
position)) ENGINE = INNODB
```

You can create the actual table in the database by using the `Doctrine::createTablesFromArray()` method:

*Listing  
16-26*

```
// test.php

// ...
Doctrine::createTablesFromArray(array('FileIndex'));
```

Now we can start using the file searcher. In this example lets just index the models directory:

*Listing  
16-27*

```
// test.php

// ...
```

```
$search->indexDirectory('models');
```

The `indexDirectory()` iterates recursively through given directory and analyzes all files within it updating the index table as necessary.

Finally we can start searching for pieces of text within the indexed files:

*Listing  
16-28*

```
// test.php

// ...
$results = $search->search('hasColumn');
print_r112($results);
```

The above example would produce the following output:

*Listing  
16-29*

```
$ php test.php
Array
(
    [0] => Array
        (
            [relevance] => 2
            [url] => models/generated/BaseNewsItem.php
        )
)
```

## Conclusion

Now that we have learned all about the `Searchable` behavior we are ready to learn in more detail about the `NestedSet` behavior in the Hierarchical Data chapter. The `NestedSet` is a large topic like the `Searchable` behavior so it got its own dedicated chapter as well.

---

<sup>112</sup>. [http://www.php.net/function.print\\_r](http://www.php.net/function.print_r)



## Chapter 17

# Hierarchical Data

## Introduction

Most users at one time or another have dealt with hierarchical data in a SQL database and no doubt learned that the management of hierarchical data is not what a relational database is intended for. The tables of a relational database are not hierarchical (like XML), but are simply a flat list. Hierarchical data has a parent-child relationship that is not naturally represented in a relational database table.

For our purposes, hierarchical data is a collection of data where each item has a single parent and zero or more children (with the exception of the root item, which has no parent). Hierarchical data can be found in a variety of database applications, including forum and mailing list threads, business organization charts, content management categories, and product categories.

In a hierarchical data model, data is organized into a tree-like structure. The tree structure allows repeating information using parent/child relationships. For an explanation of the tree data structure, see here<sup>113</sup>.

There are three major approaches to managing tree structures in relational databases, these are:

- the adjacency list model
- the nested set model (otherwise known as the modified pre-order tree traversal algorithm)
- materialized path model

**These are explained in more detail at the following links:**

- <http://www.dbazine.com/oracle/or-articles/tropashko4><sup>114</sup>
- <http://dev.mysql.com/tech-resources/articles/hierarchical-data.html><sup>115</sup>

---

113. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tree\\_data\\_structure](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tree_data_structure)

114. <http://www.dbazine.com/oracle/or-articles/tropashko4>

115. <http://dev.mysql.com/tech-resources/articles/hierarchical-data.html>

# Nested Set

## Introduction

Nested Set is a solution for storing hierarchical data that provides very fast read access. However, updating nested set trees is more costly. Therefore this solution is best suited for hierarchies that are much more frequently read than written to. And because of the nature of the web, this is the case for most web applications.

For more detailed information on the Nested Set, read here:

- <http://www.sitepoint.com/article/hierarchical-data-database/2><sup>116</sup>
- <http://dev.mysql.com/tech-resources/articles/hierarchical-data.html><sup>117</sup>

## Setting Up

To set up your model as Nested Set, you must add some code to the `setUp()` method of your model. Take this `Category` model below for example:

*Listing  
17-1*

```
// models/Category.php

class Category extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('name', 'string', 255);
    }

    public function setUp()
    {
        $this->actAs('NestedSet');
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

*Listing  
17-2*

```
# schema.yml

# ...
Category:
  actAs: [NestedSet]
  columns:
    name: string(255)
```

Detailed information on Doctrine's templating model can be found in [chapter 15 Behaviors](#). These templates add some functionality to your model. In the example of the nested set, your model gets 3 additional fields: `lft`, `rgt` and `level`. You never need to care about the `lft` and `rgt` fields. These are used internally to manage the tree structure. The `level` field however, is of interest for you because it's an integer value that represents the depth of a node within it's tree. A level of 0 means it's a root node. 1 means it's a direct child of a root

116. <http://www.sitepoint.com/article/hierarchical-data-database/2>

117. <http://dev.mysql.com/tech-resources/articles/hierarchical-data.html>

node and so on. By reading the `level` field from your nodes you can easily display your tree with proper indentation.



You must never assign values to `lft`, `rgt`, `level`. These are managed transparently by the nested set implementation.

---

## Multiple Trees

The nested set implementation can be configured to allow your table to have multiple root nodes, and therefore multiple trees within the same table.

The example below shows how to setup and use multiple roots with the `Category` model:

```
// models/Category.php

class Category extends Doctrine_Record
{
    // ...

    public function setUp()
    {
        $options = array(
            'hasManyRoots'    => true,
            'rootColumnName'  => 'root_id'
        );
        $this->actAs('NestedSet', $options);
    }
}
```

*Listing  
17-3*

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

```
# schema.yml

# ...
Category:
  actAs:
    NestedSet:
      hasManyRoots: true
      rootColumnName: root_id
  columns:
    name: string(255)
```

*Listing  
17-4*

The `rootColumnName` is the column used to differentiate between trees. When you create a new root node you have the option to set the `root_id` manually, otherwise Doctrine will assign a value for you.

In general use you do not need to deal with the `root_id` directly. For example, when you insert a new node into an existing tree or move a node between trees Doctrine transparently handles the associated `root_id` changes for you.

## Working with Trees

After you successfully set up your model as a nested set you can start working with it. Working with Doctrine's nested set implementation is all about two classes: `Doctrine_Tree_NestedSet` and `Doctrine_Node_NestedSet`. These are nested set implementations of the interfaces `Doctrine_Tree_Interface` and `Doctrine_Node_Interface`. Tree objects are bound to your table objects and node objects are bound to your record objects. This looks as follows:

The full tree interface is available by using the following code:

Listing  
17-5

```
// test.php

// ...
$treeObject = Doctrine::getTable('Category')->getTree();
```

In the next example `$category` is an instance of `Category`:

Listing  
17-6

```
// test.php

// ...
$nodeObject = $category->getNode();
```

With the above code the full node interface is available on `$nodeObject`.

In the following sub-chapters you'll see code snippets that demonstrate the most frequently used operations with the node and tree classes.

## Creating a Root Node

Listing  
17-7

```
// test.php

// ...
$category = new Category();
$category->name = 'Root Category 1';
$category->save();

$treeObject = Doctrine::getTable('Category')->getTree();
$treeObject->createRoot($category);
```

## Inserting a Node

In the next example we're going to add a new `Category` instance as a child of the root `Category` we created above:

Listing  
17-8

```
// test.php

// ...
```

```

$child1 = new Category();
$child1->name = 'Child Category 1';

$child2 = new Category();
$child2->name = 'Child Category 1';

$child1->getNode()->insertAsLastChildOf($category);
$child2->getNode()->insertAsLastChildOf($category);

```

## Deleting a Node

Deleting a node from a tree is as simple as calling the `delete()` method on the node object:

*Listing  
17-9*

```

// test.php

// ...
$category = Doctrine::getTable('Category')->findOneByName('Child Category 1');
$category->getNode()->delete();

```



The above code calls `$category->delete()` internally. It's important to delete on the node and not on the record. Otherwise you may corrupt the tree.

---

Deleting a node will also delete all descendants of that node. So make sure you move them elsewhere before you delete the node if you don't want to delete them.

## Moving a Node

Moving a node is simple. Doctrine offers several methods for moving nodes around between trees:

*Listing  
17-10*

```

// test.php

// ...
$category = new Category();
$category->name = 'Root Category 2';
$category->save();

$categoryTable = Doctrine::getTable('Category');

$treeObject = $categoryTable->getTree();
$treeObject->createRoot($category);

$childCategory = $categoryTable->findOneByName('Child Category 1');
$childCategory->getNode()->moveAsLastChildOf($category);
...

```

Below is a list of the methods available for moving nodes around:

- `moveAsLastChildOf($other)`

- `moveAsFirstChildOf($other)`
- `moveAsPrevSiblingOf($other)`
- `moveAsNextSiblingOf($other)`.

The method names should be self-explanatory to you.

## Examining a Node

You can examine the nodes and what type of node they are by using some of the following functions:

*Listing  
17-11*

```
// test.php

// ...
$isLeaf = $category->getNode()->isLeaf();
$isRoot = $category->getNode()->isRoot();
```



The above used functions return true/false depending on whether or not they are a leaf or root node.

---

## Examining and Retrieving Siblings

You can easily check if a node has any next or previous siblings by using the following methods:

*Listing  
17-12*

```
// test.php

// ...
$hasNextSib = $category->getNode()->hasNextSibling();
$hasPrevSib = $category->getNode()->hasPrevSibling();
```

You can also retrieve the next or previous siblings if they exist with the following methods:

*Listing  
17-13*

```
// test.php

// ...
$nextSib = $category->getNode()->getNextSibling();
$prevSib = $category->getNode()->getPrevSibling();
```



The above methods return false if no next or previous sibling exists.

---

If you want to retrieve an array of all the siblings you can simply use the `getSiblings()` method:

*Listing  
17-14*

```
// test.php

// ...
$siblings = $category->getNode()->getSiblings();
```

## Examining and Retrieving Descendants

You can check if a node has a parent or children by using the following methods:

*Listing  
17-15*

```
// test.php

// ...
$hasChildren = $category->getNode()->hasChildren();
$hasParent = $category->getNode()->hasParent();
```

You can retrieve a nodes first and last child by using the following methods:

*Listing  
17-16*

```
// test.php

// ...
$firstChild = $category->getNode()->getFirstChild();
$lastChild = $category->getNode()->getLastChild();
```

Or if you want to retrieve the parent of a node:

*Listing  
17-17*

```
// test.php

// ...
$parent = $category->getNode()->getParent();
```

You can get the children of a node by using the following method:

*Listing  
17-18*

```
// test.php

// ...
$children = $category->getNode()->getChildren();
```



The `getChildren()` method returns only the direct descendants. If you want all descendants, use the `getDescendants()` method.

---

You can get the descendants or ancestors of a node by using the following methods:

Listing  
17-19

```
// test.php

// ...
$descendants = $category->getNode()->getDescendants();
$ancestors = $category->getNode()->getAncestors();
```

Sometimes you may just want to get the number of children or descendants. You can use the following methods to accomplish this:

Listing  
17-20

```
// test.php

// ...
$numChildren = $category->getNode()->getNumberChildren();
$numDescendants = $category->getNode()->getNumberDescendants();
```

The `getDescendants()` and `getAncestors()` both accept a parameter that you can use to specify the depth of the resulting branch. For example `getDescendants(1)` retrieves only the direct descendants (the descendants that are 1 level below, that's the same as `getChildren()`). In the same fashion `getAncestors(1)` would only retrieve the direct ancestor (the parent), etc. `getAncestors()` can be very useful to efficiently determine the path of this node up to the root node or up to some specific ancestor (i.e. to construct a breadcrumb navigation).

## Rendering a Simple Tree



The next example assumes you have `hasManyRoots` set to `false` so in order for the below example to work properly you will have to set that option to `false`. We set the value to `true` in a earlier section.

Listing  
17-21

```
// test.php

// ...
$treeObject = Doctrine::getTable('Category')->getTree();
$tree = $treeObject->fetchTree();

foreach ($tree as $node) {
    echo str_repeat118('&nbsp;&nbsp;&nbsp;', $node['level']) . $node['name'] . "\n";
}
```

## Advanced Usage

The previous sections have explained the basic usage of Doctrine's nested set implementation. This section will go one step further.

---

<sup>118</sup>. [http://www.php.net/function.str\\_repeat](http://www.php.net/function.str_repeat)



## Fetching a Tree with Relations

If you're a demanding software developer this question may already have come into your mind: "How do I fetch a tree/branch with related data?". Simple example: You want to display a tree of categories, but you also want to display some related data of each category, let's say some details of the hottest product in that category. Fetching the tree as seen in the previous sections and simply accessing the relations while iterating over the tree is possible but produces a lot of unnecessary database queries. Luckily, `Doctrine_Query` and some flexibility in the nested set implementation have come to your rescue. The nested set implementation uses `Doctrine_Query` objects for all its database work. By giving you access to the base query object of the nested set implementation you can unleash the full power of `Doctrine_Query` while using your nested set.

First let's create the query we want to use to retrieve our tree data with:

```
// test.php

// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create();
    ->select('c.name, p.name, m.name')
    ->from('Category c')
    ->leftJoin('c.HottestProduct p')
    ->leftJoin('p.Manufacturer m');
```

Listing  
17-22

Now we need to set the above query as the base query for the tree:

```
$treeObject = Doctrine::getTable('Category')->getTree();
$treeObject->setBaseQuery($q);
$tree = $treeObject->fetchTree();
```

Listing  
17-23

There it is, the tree with all the related data you need, all in one query.



If you don't set your own base query then one will be automatically created for you internally.

---

When you are done it is a good idea to reset the base query back to normal:

```
// test.php

// ...
$treeObject->resetBaseQuery();
```

Listing  
17-24

You can take it even further. As mentioned in the chapter *Improving Performance* you should only fetch objects when you need them. So, if we need the tree only for display purposes (read-only) we can use the array hydration to speed things up a bit:

```
// test.php
```

Listing  
17-25

```
// ...
$q = Doctrine_Query::create();
    ->select('c.name, p.name, m.name')
    ->from('Category c')
    ->leftJoin('c.HottestProduct p')
    ->leftJoin('p.Manufacturer m')
    ->setHydrationMode(Doctrine::HYDRATE_ARRAY);

$treeObject = Doctrine::getTable('Category')->getTree();
$treeObject->setBaseQuery($q);
$tree = $treeObject->fetchTree();
$treeObject->resetBaseQuery();
```

Now you got a nicely structured array in `$tree` and if you use array access on your records anyway, such a change will not even effect any other part of your code. This method of modifying the query can be used for all node and tree methods (`getAncestors()`, `getDescendants()`, `getChildren()`, `getParent()`, ...). Simply create your query, set it as the base query on the tree object and then invoke the appropriate method.

## Rendering with Indention

Below you will find an example where all trees are rendered with proper indention. You can retrieve the roots using the `fetchRoots()` method and retrieve each individual tree by using the `fetchTree()` method.

Listing  
17-26

```
// test.php

// ...
$treeObject = Doctrine::getTable('Category')->getTree();
$rootColumnName = $treeObject->getAttribute('rootColumnName');

foreach ($treeObject->fetchRoots() as $root) {
    $options = array(
        'root_id' => $root->$rootColumnName
    );
    foreach($treeObject->fetchTree($options) as $node) {
        echo str_repeat119(' ', $node['level']) . $node['name'] . "\n";
    }
}
```

After doing all the examples above the code above should render as follows:

Listing  
17-27

```
$ php test.php
Root Category 1
Root Category 2
  Child Category 1
```

---

119. [http://www.php.net/function.str\\_repeat](http://www.php.net/function.str_repeat)

## Conclusion

Now that we have learned all about the `NestedSet` behavior and how to manage our hierarchical data using Doctrine we are ready to learn about Data Fixtures. Data fixtures are a great tool for loading small sets of test data in to your applications to be used for unit and functional tests or to populate your application with its initial data.

## Chapter 18

# Data Fixtures

Data fixtures are meant for loading small sets of test data through your models to populate your database with data to test against. The data fixtures are often used side by side with some kind of unit/functional testing suite.

## Importing

Importing data fixtures is just as easy as dumping. You can use the `loadData()` function:

*Listing  
18-1*

```
Doctrine::loadData('/path/to/data.yml');
```

You can either specify an individual yml file like we have done above, or you can specify an entire directory:

*Listing  
18-2*

```
Doctrine::loadData('/path/to/directory');
```

If you want to append the imported data to the already existing data then you need to use the second argument of the `loadData()` function. If you don't specify the second argument as `true` then the data will be purged before importing.

Here is how you can append instead of purging:

*Listing  
18-3*

```
Doctrine::loadData('/path/to/data.yml', true);
```

## Dumping

You can dump data to fixtures file in many different formats to help you get started with writing your data fixtures. You can dump your data fixtures to one big YAML file like the following:

*Listing  
18-4*

```
Doctrine::dumpData('/path/to/data.yml');
```

Or you can optionally dump all data to individual files. One YAML file per model like the following:

```
Doctrine::dumpData('/path/to/directory', true);
```

*Listing  
18-5*

## Implement

Now that we know a little about data fixtures lets implement them in to our test environment we created and have been using through the previous chapters so that we can test the example fixtures used in the next sections.

First create a directory in your `doctrine_test` directory named `fixtures` and create a file named `data.yml` inside:

```
$ mkdir fixtures  
$ touch fixtures/data.yml
```

*Listing  
18-6*

Now we need to just modify our `generate.php` script to include the code for loading the data fixtures. Add the following code to the bottom of `generate.php`:

```
// generate.php  
  
// ...  
Doctrine::loadData('fixtures');
```

*Listing  
18-7*

## Writing

You can write your fixtures files manually and load them in to your applications. Below is a sample `data.yml` fixtures file. You can also split your data fixtures file up in to multiple files. Doctrine will read all fixtures files and parse them, then load all data.

For the next several examples we will use the following models:

```
// models/Resource.php  
  
class Resource extends Doctrine_Record  
{  
    public function setTableDefinition()  
    {  
        $this->hasColumn('name', 'string', 255);  
        $this->hasColumn('resource_type_id', 'integer');  
    }  
  
    public function setUp()  
    {
```

*Listing  
18-8*

```
        $this->hasOne('ResourceType as Type', array(
            'local' => 'resource_type_id',
            'foreign' => 'id'
        ))
    );
}

$this->hasMany('Tag as Tags', array(
    'local' => 'resource_id',
    'foreign' => 'tag_id',
    'refClass' => 'ResourceTag'
));
}
}

// models/ResourceType.php

class ResourceType extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('name', 'string', 255);
    }

    public function setUp()
    {
        $this->hasMany('Resource as Resources', array(
            'local' => 'id',
            'foreign' => 'resource_type_id'
        ));
    }
}

// models/Tag.php

class Tag extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('name', 'string', 255);
    }

    public function setUp()
    {
        $this->hasMany('Resource as Resources', array(
            'local' => 'tag_id',
            'foreign' => 'resource_id',
            'refClass' => 'ResourceTag'
        ));
    }
}

// models/ResourceTag.php

class ResourceTag extends Doctrine_Record
{
```

```

    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('resource_id', 'integer');
        $this->hasColumn('tag_id', 'integer');
    }
}

// models/Category.php

class BaseCategory extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('name', 'string', 255, array(
            'type' => 'string',
            'length' => '255'
        ));
    }

    public function setUp()
    {
        $this->actAs('NestedSet');
    }
}

class BaseArticle extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('title', 'string', 255, array(
            'type' => 'string',
            'length' => '255'
        ));

        $this->hasColumn('body', 'clob', null, array(
            'type' => 'clob'
        ));
    }

    public function setUp()
    {
        $this->actAs('I18n', array('fields' => array('title', 'body')));
    }
}

```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

```
# schema.yml
```

```
Resource:
  columns:
    name: string(255)
```

Listing  
18-9

```

    resource_type_id: integer
relations:
  Type:
    class: ResourceType
    foreignAlias: Resources
  Tags:
    class: Tag
    refClass: ResourceTag
    foreignAlias: Resources

ResourceType:
  columns:
    name: string(255)

Tag:
  columns:
    name: string(255)

ResourceTag:
  columns:
    resource_id: integer
    tag_id: integer

Category:
  actAs: [NestedSet]
  columns:
    name: string(255)

Article:
  actAs:
    I18n:
      fields: [title, body]
  columns:
    title: string(255)
    body: clob

```



All row keys across all YAML data fixtures must be unique. For example below tutorial, doctrine, help, cheat are all unique.

---

*Listing 18-10* # fixtures/data.yml

```

Resource:
  Resource_1:
    name: Doctrine Video Tutorial
    Type: Video
    Tags: [tutorial, doctrine, help]
  Resource_2:
    name: Doctrine Cheat Sheet
    Type: Image
    Tags: [tutorial, cheat, help]

ResourceType:
  Video:
    name: Video
  Image:
    name: Image

```



```

Tag:
  tutorial:
    name: tutorial
  doctrine:
    name: doctrine
  help:
    name: help
  cheat:
    name: cheat

```

You could optionally specify the Resources each tag is related to instead of specifying the Tags a Resource has.

```

# fixtures/data.yml

# ...
Tag:
  tutorial:
    name: tutorial
    Resources: [Resource_1, Resource_2]
  doctrine:
    name: doctrine
    Resources: [Resource_1]
  help:
    name: help
    Resources: [Resource_1, Resource_2]
  cheat:
    name: cheat
    Resources: [Resource_1]

```

*Listing  
18-11*

## Fixtures For Nested Sets

Writing a fixtures file for a nested set tree is slightly different from writing regular fixtures files. The structure of the tree is defined like the following:

```

# fixtures/data.yml

# ...
Category:
  Category_1:
    name: Categories # the root node
    children:
      Category_2:
        name: Category 1
      Category_3:
        name: Category 2
        children:
          Category_4:
            name: Subcategory of Category 2

```

*Listing  
18-12*



Notice how the children of each node is specified under a key named `children`. This is a special syntax that models with the `NestedSet` behavior enabled on look for.

---

## Fixtures For I18n

The fixtures for the I18n aren't anything custom since the I18n really is just a normal set of relationships that are built on the fly dynamically:

*Listing 18-13*

```
# fixtures/data.yml

# ...
Article:
  Article_1:
    Translation:
      en:
        title: Title of article
        body: Body of article
      fr:
        title: French title of article
        body: French body of article
```

## Conclusion

By now we should be able to write and load our own data fixtures in our application. So, now we will move on to learning about the underlying Database Abstraction Layer in Doctrine. This layer is what makes all the previously discussed functionality possible. You can use this layer standalone apart from the ORM. In the next chapter we'll explain how you can use the DBAL by itself.

## Chapter 19

# Database Abstraction Layer

The Doctrine Database Abstraction Layer is the underlying framework that the ORM uses to communicate with the database and send the appropriate SQL depending on which database type you are using. It also has the ability to query the database for information like what table a database has or what fields a table has. This is how Doctrine is able to generate your models from existing databases so easily.

This layer can be used independently of the ORM. This might be of use for example if you have an existing application that uses PDO directly and you want to port it to use the Doctrine Connections and DBAL. At a later phase you could begin to use the ORM for new things and rewrite old pieces to use the ORM.

The DBAL is composed of a few different modules. In this chapter we will discuss the different modules and what their jobs are.

## Export

The Export module provides methods for managing database structure. The methods can be grouped based on their responsibility: create, edit (alter or update), list or delete (drop) database elements. The following document lists the available methods, providing examples of their use.

### Introduction

Every schema altering method in the Export module has an equivalent which returns the SQL that is used for the altering operation. For example `createTable()` executes the query / queries returned by `createTableSql()`.

In this chapter the following tables will be created, altered and finally dropped, in a database named `events_db`:

#### **events**

Name	Type	Primary	Auto Increment
id	integer	true	true
name	string(255)	false	false
datetime	timestamp	false	false

#### **people**

Name	Type	Primary	Auto Increment
------	------	---------	----------------

id	integer	true	true
name	string(255)	false	false

### event\_participants

Name	Type	Primary	Auto Increment
event_id	integer	true	false
person_id	string(255)	true	false

## Creating Databases

It is simple to create new databases with Doctrine. It is only a matter of calling the `createDatabase()` function with an argument that is the name of the database to create.

Listing  
19-1

```
// test.php

// ...
$conn->export->createDatabase('events_db');
```

Now lets change the connection in our `bootstrap.php` file to connect to the new `events_db`:

Listing  
19-2

```
// bootstrap.php

/**
 * Bootstrap Doctrine.php, register autoloader and specify
 * configuration attributes
 */

// ...

$conn = Doctrine_Manager::connection('mysql://root:@localhost/events_db',
'doctrine');

// ...
```

## Creating Tables

Now that the database is created and we've re-configured our connection, we can proceed with adding some tables. The method `createTable()` takes three parameters: the table name, an array of field definition and some extra options (optional and RDBMS-specific).

Now lets create the `events` table:

Listing  
19-3

```
// test.php

//
$definition = array(
    'id' => array(
```

```

        'type' => 'integer',
        'primary' => true,
        'autoincrement' => true
    ),
    'name' => array(
        'type' => 'string',
        'length' => 255
    ),
    'datetime' => array(
        'type' => 'timestamp'
    )
);

$conn->export->createTable('events', $definition);

```

The keys of the definition array are the names of the fields in the table. The values are arrays containing the required key `type` as well as other keys, depending on the value of `type`. The values for the `type` key are the same as the possible Doctrine datatypes. Depending on the datatype, the other options may vary.

Datatype	length	default	not null	unsigned	autoincrement
string	x	x	x		
boolean		x	x		
integer	x	x	x	x	x
decimal		x	x		
float		x	x		
timestamp		x	x		
time		x	x		
date		x	x		
clob	x		x		
blob	x		x		

And now we can go ahead and create the `people` table:

```

// test.php

// ...
$definition = array(
    'id' => array(
        'type' => 'integer',
        'primary' => true,
        'autoincrement' => true
    ),
    'name' => array(
        'type' => 'string',
        'length' => 255
    )
);

$conn->export->createTable('people', $definition);

```

Listing  
19-4

You can also specify an array of options as the third argument to the `createTable()` method:

Listing  
19-5

```
// test.php

// ...
$options = array(
    'comment' => 'Repository of people',
    'character_set' => 'utf8',
    'collate' => 'utf8_unicode_ci',
    'type' => 'innodb',
);

// ...

$conn->export->createTable('people', $definition, $options);
```

## Creating Foreign Keys

Creating the `event_participants` table with a foreign key:

Listing  
19-6

```
// test.php

// ...
$options = array(
    'foreignKeys' => array(
        'events_id_fk' => array(
            'local' => 'event_id',
            'foreign' => 'id',
            'foreignTable' => 'events',
            'onDelete' => 'CASCADE',
        )
    ),
    'primary' => array('event_id', 'person_id'),
);

$definition = array(
    'event_id' => array(
        'type' => 'integer',
        'primary' => true
    ),
    'person_id' => array(
        'type' => 'integer',
        'primary' => true
    ),
);

$conn->export->createTable('event_participants', $definition, $options);
```



In the above example notice how we omit a foreign key for the `person_id`. In that example we omit it so we can show you how to add an individual foreign key to a table in the next example. Normally it would be best to have both foreign keys defined on the in the `foreignKeys`.

Now lets add the missing foreign key in the `event_participants` table the on `person_id` column:

Listing  
19-7

```
// test.php

// ...
$definition = array('local' => 'person_id',
                    'foreign' => 'id',
                    'foreignTable' => 'people',
                    'onDelete' => 'CASCADE');

$conn->export->createForeignKey('event_participants', $definition);
```

## Altering table

Doctrine\_Export drivers provide an easy database portable way of altering existing database tables.

Listing  
19-8

```
// test.php

// ...
$alter = array(
    'add' => array(
        'new_column' => array(
            'type' => 'string',
            'length' => 255
        ),
        'new_column2' => array(
            'type' => 'string',
            'length' => 255
        )
    )
);

echo $conn->export->alterTableSql('events', $alter);
```

The above call to `alterTableSql()` would output the following SQL query:

```
ALTER TABLE events ADD new_column VARCHAR(255),
ADD new_column2 VARCHAR(255)
```

Listing  
19-9



If you only want execute generated sql and not return it, use the `alterTable()` method.

Listing  
19-10

```
// test.php

// ...

$conn->export->alterTable('events', $alter);
```

The `alterTable()` method requires two parameters and has an optional third:

Name	Type	Description
<code>\$name</code>	string	Name of the table that is intended to be changed.
<code>\$changes</code>	array	Associative array that contains the details of each type of change that is intended to be performed.

An optional third parameter (default: false):

Name	Type	Description
<code>\$check</code>	boolean	Check if the DBMS can actually perform the operation before executing.

The types of changes that are currently supported are defined as follows:

Change	Description
<code>name</code>	New name for the table.
<code>add</code>	Associative array with the names of fields to be added as indexes of the array. The value of each entry of the array should be set to another associative array with the properties of the fields to be added. The properties of the fields should be the same as defined by the Doctrine parser.
<code>remove</code>	Associative array with the names of fields to be removed as indexes of the array. Currently the values assigned to each entry are ignored. An empty array should be used for future compatibility.
<code>rename</code>	Associative array with the names of fields to be renamed as indexes of the array. The value of each entry of the array should be set to another associative array with the entry named <code>name</code> with the new field name and the entry named <code>Declaration</code> that is expected to contain the portion of the field declaration already in DBMS specific SQL code as it is used in the <code>CREATE TABLE</code> statement.
<code>change</code>	Associative array with the names of the fields to be changed as indexes of the array. Keep in mind that if it is intended to change either the name of a field and any other properties, the change array entries should have the new names of the fields as array indexes.

The value of each entry of the array should be set to another associative array with the properties of the fields to that are meant to be changed as array entries. These entries should be assigned to the new values of the respective properties. The properties of the fields should be the same as defined by the Doctrine parser.

Listing  
19-11

```
// test.php

// ...
$alter = array('name' => 'event',
               'add' => array(
```



```

        'quota' => array(
            'type' => 'integer',
            'unsigned' => 1
        )
    ),
    'remove' => array(
        'new_column2' => array()
    ),
    'change' => array(
        'name' => array(
            'length' => '20',
            'definition' => array(
                'type' => 'string',
                'length' => 20
            )
        )
    ),
    'rename' => array(
        'new_column' => array(
            'name' => 'gender',
            'definition' => array(
                'type' => 'string',
                'length' => 1,
                'default' => 'M'
            )
        )
    )
);

$conn->export->alterTable('events', $alter);

```



Notice how we renamed the table to `event`, lets rename it back to `events`. We only renamed it to demonstrate the functionality and we will need the table to be named `events` for the next examples.

---

```

// test.php

// ...
$alter = array(
    'name' => 'events'
);

$conn->export->alterTable('event', $alter);

```

*Listing  
19-12*

## Creating Indexes

To create an index, the method `createIndex()` is used, which has similar signature as `createConstraint()`, so it takes table name, index name and a definition array. The definition array has one key named `fields` with a value which is another associative array

containing fields that will be a part of the index. The fields are defined as arrays with possible keys: sorting, with values ascending and descending length, integer value

Not all RDBMS will support index sorting or length, in these cases the drivers will ignore them. In the test events database, we can assume that our application will show events occurring in a specific timeframe, so the selects will use the datetime field in WHERE conditions. It will help if there is an index on this field.

Listing  
19-13

```
// test.php

// ...
$definition = array(
    'fields' => array(
        'datetime' => array()
    )
);

$conn->export->createIndex('events', 'datetime', $definition);
```

## Deleting database elements

For every `create*()` method as shown above, there is a corresponding `drop*()` method to delete a database, a table, field, index or constraint. The `drop*()` methods do not check if the item to be deleted exists, so it's developer's responsibility to check for exceptions using a try catch block:

Listing  
19-14

```
// test.php

// ...
try {
    $conn->export->dropSequence('nonexisting');
} catch(Doctrine_Exception $e) {

}
```

You can easily drop a constraint with the following code:

Listing  
19-15

```
// test.php

// ...
$conn->export->dropConstraint('events', 'PRIMARY', true);
```



The third parameter gives a hint that this is a primary key constraint.

---

Listing  
19-16

```
// test.php
```

```
// ...  
$conn->export->dropConstraint('event_participants', 'event_id');
```

You can easily drop an index with the following code:

```
$conn->export->dropIndex('events', 'event_timestamp');
```

*Listing  
19-17*



It is recommended to not actually execute the next two examples. In the next section we will need the `events_db` to be intact for our examples to work.

---

Drop a table from the database with the following code:

```
// test.php  
  
// ...  
$conn->export->dropTable('events');
```

*Listing  
19-18*

We can drop the database with the following code:

```
// test.php  
  
// ...  
$conn->export->dropDatabase('events_db');
```

*Listing  
19-19*

## Import

The import module allows you to inspect a the contents of a database connection and learn about the databases and schemas in each database.

### Introduction

To see what's in the database, you can use the `list*()` family of functions in the Import module.

Name	Description
<code>listDatabases()</code>	List the databases
<code>listFunctions()</code>	List the available functions.
<code>listSequences(\$dbName)</code>	List the available sequences. Takes optional database name as a parameter. If not supplied, the currently selected database is assumed.

<code>listTableConstraints(\$tableName)</code>	
<code>listTableColumns(\$tableName)</code>	List the columns available in a table.
<code>listTableIndexes(\$tableName)</code>	List the indexes defined in a table.
<code>listTables(\$dbName)</code>	List the tables in a database.
<code>listTableTriggers(\$tableName)</code>	List the triggers in a table.
<code>listTableViews(\$tableName)</code>	List the views available in a table.
<code>listUsers()</code>	List the users for the database.
<code>listViews(\$dbName)</code>	List the views available for a database.

Below you will find examples on how to use the above listed functions:

## Listing Databases

*Listing  
19-20*

```
// test.php

// ...
$databases = $conn->import->listDatabases();
print_r120($databases);
```

## Listing Sequences

*Listing  
19-21*

```
// test.php

// ...
$sequences = $conn->import->listSequences('events_db');
print_r121($sequences);
```

## Listing Constraints

*Listing  
19-22*

```
// test.php

// ...
$constraints = $conn->import->listTableConstraints('event_participants');
print_r122($constraints);
```

## Listing Table Columns

*Listing  
19-23*

```
// test.php
```

---

```
120. http://www.php.net/function.print\_r
121. http://www.php.net/function.print\_r
122. http://www.php.net/function.print\_r
```

```
// ...
$columns = $conn->import->listTableColumns('events');
print_r123($columns);
```

## Listing Table Indexes

Listing  
19-24

```
// test.php

// ...
$indexes = $conn->import->listTableIndexes('events');
print_r124($indexes);
```

## Listing Tables

Listing  
19-25

```
$tables = $conn->import->listTables();
print_r125($tables);
```

## Listing Views



Currently there is no method to create views, so let's do it manually.

Listing  
19-26

```
$sql = "CREATE VIEW names_only AS SELECT name FROM people";
$conn->exec126($sql);

$sql = "CREATE VIEW last_ten_events AS SELECT * FROM events ORDER BY id DESC LIMIT
0,10";
$conn->exec127($sql);
```

Now we can list the views we just created:

Listing  
19-27

```
$views = $conn->import->listViews();
print_r128($views);
```

---

123. [http://www.php.net/function.print\\_r](http://www.php.net/function.print_r)  
 124. [http://www.php.net/function.print\\_r](http://www.php.net/function.print_r)  
 125. [http://www.php.net/function.print\\_r](http://www.php.net/function.print_r)  
 126. <http://www.php.net/function.exec>  
 127. <http://www.php.net/function.exec>  
 128. [http://www.php.net/function.print\\_r](http://www.php.net/function.print_r)

# DataDict

## Introduction

Doctrine uses the **DataDict** module internally to convert native RDBMS types to Doctrine types and the reverse. **DataDict** module uses two methods for the conversions:

- **getPortableDeclaration()**, which is used for converting native RDBMS type declaration to portable Doctrine declaration
- **getNativeDeclaration()**, which is used for converting portable Doctrine declaration to driver specific type declaration

## Getting portable declaration

*Listing  
19-28*

```
// test.php

// ...
$declaration = $conn->dataDict->getPortableDeclaration('VARCHAR(255)');

print_r129($declaration);
```

The above example would output the following:

*Listing  
19-29*

```
$ php test.php
Array
(
    [type] => Array
        (
            [0] => string
        )

    [length] => 255
    [unsigned] =>
    [fixed] =>
)
```

## Getting Native Declaration

*Listing  
19-30*

```
// test.php

// ...
$portableDeclaration = array(
    'type' => 'string',
    'length' => 20,
    'fixed' => true
);

$nativeDeclaration = $conn->dataDict->getNativeDeclaration($portableDeclaration);
```

---

129. [http://www.php.net/function.print\\_r](http://www.php.net/function.print_r)

```
echo $nativeDeclaration;
```

The above example would output the following:

```
$ php test.php  
CHAR(20)
```

*Listing  
19-31*

## Drivers

### Mysql

#### Setting table type

```
// test.php  
  
// ...  
$fields = array(  
    'id' => array(  
        'type' => 'integer',  
        'autoincrement' => true  
    ),  
    'name' => array(  
        'type' => 'string',  
        'fixed' => true,  
        'length' => 8  
    )  
);
```

*Listing  
19-32*



The following option is mysql specific and skipped by other drivers.

---

```
$options = array('type' => 'INNODB');  
  
$sql = $conn->export->createTableSql('test_table', $fields);  
echo $sql[0];
```

*Listing  
19-33*

The above will output the following SQL query:

```
CREATE TABLE test_table (id INT AUTO_INCREMENT,  
name CHAR(8)) ENGINE = INNODB
```

*Listing  
19-34*

## Conclusion

This chapter is indeed a nice one. The Doctrine DBAL is a great tool all by itself. It is probably one of the most fully featured and easy to use PHP database abstraction layers available today.

Now we are ready to move on and learn about how to use Transactions.



## Chapter 20

# Transactions

## Introduction

A database transaction is a unit of interaction with a database management system or similar system that is treated in a coherent and reliable way independent of other transactions that must be either entirely completed or aborted. Ideally, a database system will guarantee all of the ACID (Atomicity, Consistency, Isolation, and Durability) properties for each transaction.

- Atomicity<sup>130</sup> refers to the ability of the DBMS to guarantee that either all of the tasks of a transaction are performed or none of them are. The transfer of funds can be completed or it can fail for a multitude of reasons, but atomicity guarantees that one account won't be debited if the other is not credited as well.
- Consistency<sup>131</sup> refers to the database being in a legal state when the transaction begins and when it ends. This means that a transaction can't break the rules, or *integrity constraints*, of the database. If an integrity constraint states that all accounts must have a positive balance, then any transaction violating this rule will be aborted.
- Isolation<sup>132</sup> refers to the ability of the application to make operations in a transaction appear isolated from all other operations. This means that no operation outside the transaction can ever see the data in an intermediate state; a bank manager can see the transferred funds on one account or the other, but never on both - even if she ran her query while the transfer was still being processed. More formally, isolation means the transaction history (or schedule<sup>133</sup>) is serializable<sup>134</sup>. For performance reasons, this ability is the most often relaxed constraint. See the isolation<sup>135</sup> article for more details.
- Durability<sup>136</sup> refers to the guarantee that once the user has been notified of success, the transaction will persist, and not be undone. This means it will survive system failure, and that the database system<sup>137</sup> has checked the integrity constraints and won't need to abort the transaction. Typically, all transactions are written into a log<sup>138</sup> that can be played back to recreate the system to its state right before the failure. A transaction can only be deemed committed after it is safely in the log.

---

130. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Atomicity>

131. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Database\\_consistency](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Database_consistency)

132. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isolation\\_%28computer\\_science%29](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isolation_%28computer_science%29)

133. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Schedule\\_%28computer\\_science%29](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Schedule_%28computer_science%29)

134. <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Serializability>

135. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isolation\\_%28computer\\_science%29](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isolation_%28computer_science%29)

136. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Durability\\_%28computer\\_science%29](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Durability_%28computer_science%29)

137. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Database\\_system](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Database_system)

138. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Database\\_log](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Database_log)

In Doctrine all operations are wrapped in transactions by default. There are some things that should be noticed about how Doctrine works internally:

- Doctrine uses application level transaction nesting.
- Doctrine always executes **INSERT / UPDATE / DELETE** queries at the end of transaction (when the outermost commit is called). The operations are performed in the following order: all inserts, all updates and last all deletes. Doctrine knows how to optimize the deletes so that delete operations of the same component are gathered in one query.

First we need to begin a new transaction:

Listing  
20-1

```
$conn->beginTransaction();
```

Next perform some operations which result in queries being executed:

Listing  
20-2

```
$user = new User();  
$user->name = 'New user';  
$user->save();  
  
$user = Doctrine::getTable('User')->find(5);  
$user->name = 'Modified user';  
$user->save();
```

Now we can commit all the queries by using the `commit()` method:

Listing  
20-3

```
$conn->commit();
```

## Nesting

You can easily nest transactions with the Doctrine DBAL. Check the code below for a simple example demonstrating nested transactions.

First let's create a standard PHP function named `saveUserAndGroup()`:

Listing  
20-4

```
function saveUserAndGroup(Doctrine_Connection $conn, User $user, Group $group)  
{  
    $conn->beginTransaction();  
  
    $user->save();  
  
    $group->save();  
  
    $conn->commit();  
}
```

Now we make use of the function inside another transaction:

Listing  
20-5

```
try {
    $conn->beginTransaction();

    saveUserAndGroup($conn,$user,$group);
    saveUserAndGroup($conn,$user2,$group2);
    saveUserAndGroup($conn,$user3,$group3);

    $conn->commit();
} catch(Doctrine_Exception $e) {
    $conn->rollback();
}
```



Notice how the three calls to `saveUserAndGroup()` are wrapped in a transaction, and each call to the function starts its own nested transaction.

---

## Savepoints

Doctrine supports transaction savepoints. This means you can set named transactions and have them nested.

The `Doctrine_Transaction::beginTransaction($savepoint)` sets a named transaction savepoint with a name of `$savepoint`. If the current transaction has a savepoint with the same name, the old savepoint is deleted and a new one is set.

Listing  
20-6

```
try {
    $conn->beginTransaction();
    // do some operations here

    // creates a new savepoint called mysavepoint
    $conn->beginTransaction('mysavepoint');
    try {
        // do some operations here

        $conn->commit('mysavepoint');
    } catch(Exception $e) {
        $conn->rollback('mysavepoint');
    }
    $conn->commit();
} catch(Exception $e) {
    $conn->rollback();
}
```

The `Doctrine_Transaction::rollback($savepoint)` rolls back a transaction to the named savepoint. Modifications that the current transaction made to rows after the savepoint was set are undone in the rollback.



Mysql, for example, does not release the row locks that were stored in memory after the savepoint.

Savepoints that were set at a later time than the named savepoint are deleted.

The `Doctrine_Transaction::commit($savepoint)` removes the named savepoint from the set of savepoints of the current transaction.

All savepoints of the current transaction are deleted if you execute a commit or if a rollback is being called without savepoint name parameter.

Listing  
20-7

```
try {
    $conn->beginTransaction();
    // do some operations here

    // creates a new savepoint called mysavepoint
    $conn->beginTransaction('mysavepoint');

    // do some operations here

    $conn->commit(); // deletes all savepoints
} catch(Exception $e) {
    $conn->rollback(); // deletes all savepoints
}
```

## Isolation Levels

A transaction isolation level sets the default transactional behavior. As the name 'isolation level' suggests, the setting determines how isolated each transaction is, or what kind of locks are associated with queries inside a transaction. The four available levels are (in ascending order of strictness):

### READ UNCOMMITTED

Barely transactional, this setting allows for so-called 'dirty reads', where queries inside one transaction are affected by uncommitted changes in another transaction.

### READ COMMITTED

Committed updates are visible within another transaction. This means identical queries within a transaction can return differing results. This is the default in some DBMS's.

### REPEATABLE READ

Within a transaction, all reads are consistent. This is the default of Mysql INNODB engine.

### SERIALIZABLE

Updates are not permitted in other transactions if a transaction has run an ordinary SELECT query.

To get the transaction module use the following code:

Listing  
20-8

```
$tx = $conn->transaction;
```

Set the isolation level to READ COMMITTED:

```
$tx->setIsolation('READ COMMITTED');
```

*Listing  
20-9*

Set the isolation level to SERIALIZABLE:

```
$tx->setIsolation('SERIALIZABLE');
```

*Listing  
20-10*



Some drivers (like Mysql) support the fetching of current transaction isolation level. It can be done as follows:

---

```
$level = $tx->getIsolation();
```

*Listing  
20-11*

## Conclusion

Transactions are a great feature for ensuring the quality and consistency of your database. Now that you know about transactions we are ready to move on and learn about the events sub-framework.

The events sub-framework is a great feature that allows you to hook in to core methods of Doctrine and alter the operations of internal functionality without modifying one line of core code.

## Chapter 21

# Event Listeners

## Introduction

Doctrine provides flexible event listener architecture that not only allows listening for different events but also for altering the execution of the listened methods.

There are several different listeners and hooks for various Doctrine components. Listeners are separate classes whereas hooks are empty template methods within the listened class.

Hooks are simpler than event listeners but they lack the separation of different aspects. An example of using `Doctrine_Record` hooks:

*Listing  
21-1*

```
// models/BlogPost.php

class BlogPost extends Doctrine_Record
{
    // ...

    public function preInsert($event)
    {
        $invoker = $event->getInvoker();

        $invoker->created = date139('Y-m-d', time140());
    }
}
```



By now we have defined lots of models so you should be able to define your own `setTableDefinition()` for the `BlogPost` model or even create your own custom model!

---

Now you can use the above model with the following code assuming we added a `title`, `body` and `created` column to the model:

*Listing  
21-2*

```
// test.php

// ...
```

---

<sup>139.</sup> <http://www.php.net/function.date>  
<sup>140.</sup> <http://www.php.net/function.time>

```
$blog = new BlogPost();
$blog->title = 'New title';
$blog->body = 'Some content';
$blog->save();

echo $blog->created;
```

The above example will output the current date as PHP knows it.

Each listener and hook method takes one parameter `Doctrine_Event` object. `Doctrine_Event` object holds information about the event in question and can alter the execution of the listened method.

For the purposes of this documentation many method tables are provided with column named `params` indicating names of the parameters that an event object holds on given event. For example the `preCreateSavepoint` event has one parameter with the name of the created savepoint, which is quite intuitively named as `savepoint`.

## Connection Listeners

Connection listeners are used for listening the methods of `Doctrine_Connection` and its modules (such as `Doctrine_Transaction`). All listener methods take one argument `Doctrine_Event` which holds information about the listened event.

### Creating a New Listener

There are three different ways of defining a listener. First you can create a listener by making a class that inherits `Doctrine_EventListener`:

```
class MyListener extends Doctrine_EventListener
{
    public function preExec(Doctrine_Event $event)
    {
    }
}
```

*Listing  
21-3*

Note that by declaring a class that extends `Doctrine_EventListener` you don't have to define all the methods within the `Doctrine_EventListener_Interface`. This is due to a fact that `Doctrine_EventListener` already has empty skeletons for all these methods.

Sometimes it may not be possible to define a listener that extends `Doctrine_EventListener` (you might have a listener that inherits some other base class). In this case you can make it implement `Doctrine_EventListener_Interface`.

```
class MyListener implements Doctrine_EventListener_Interface
{
    public function preTransactionCommit(Doctrine_Event $event) {}
    public function postTransactionCommit(Doctrine_Event $event) {}

    public function preTransactionRollback(Doctrine_Event $event) {}
}
```

*Listing  
21-4*

```

    public function postTransactionRollback(Doctrine_Event $event) {}

    public function preTransactionBegin(Doctrine_Event $event) {}
    public function postTransactionBegin(Doctrine_Event $event) {}

    public function postConnect(Doctrine_Event $event) {}
    public function preConnect(Doctrine_Event $event) {}

    public function preQuery(Doctrine_Event $event) {}
    public function postQuery(Doctrine_Event $event) {}

    public function prePrepare(Doctrine_Event $event) {}
    public function postPrepare(Doctrine_Event $event) {}

    public function preExec(Doctrine_Event $event) {}
    public function postExec(Doctrine_Event $event) {}

    public function preError(Doctrine_Event $event) {}
    public function postError(Doctrine_Event $event) {}

    public function preFetch(Doctrine_Event $event) {}
    public function postFetch(Doctrine_Event $event) {}

    public function preFetchAll(Doctrine_Event $event) {}
    public function postFetchAll(Doctrine_Event $event) {}

    public function preStmtExecute(Doctrine_Event $event) {}
    public function postStmtExecute(Doctrine_Event $event) {}
}

```



All listener methods must be defined here otherwise PHP throws fatal error.

---

The third way of creating a listener is a very elegant one. You can make a class that implements `Doctrine_Overloadable`. This interface has only one method: `__call()`, which can be used for catching *\*all\** the events.

Listing  
21-5

```

class MyDebugger implements Doctrine_Overloadable
{
    public function __call($methodName, $args)
    {
        echo $methodName . ' called !';
    }
}

```

## Attaching listeners

You can attach the listeners to a connection with `setListener()`.

Listing  
21-6

```

$conn->setListener(new MyDebugger());

```



If you need to use multiple listeners you can use `addListener()`.

```
$conn->addListener(new MyDebugger());
$conn->addListener(new MyLogger());
```

Listing  
21-7

## Pre and Post Connect

Methods	Listens	Params
<code>preConnect(Doctrine_Event \$event)</code>	<code>Doctrine_Connection::connection()</code>	
<code>postConnect(Doctrine_Event \$event)</code>	<code>Doctrine_Connection::connection()</code>	

## Transaction Listeners

Methods	Listens	Params
<code>preTransactionBegin(Doctrine_Event \$event)</code>	<code>Doctrine_Transaction::beginTransaction()</code>	
<code>postTransactionBegin(Doctrine_Event \$event)</code>	<code>Doctrine_Transaction::beginTransaction()</code>	
<code>preTransactionRollback(Doctrine_Event \$event)</code>	<code>Doctrine_Transaction::rollback()</code>	
<code>postTransactionRollback(Doctrine_Event \$event)</code>	<code>Doctrine_Transaction::rollback()</code>	
<code>preTransactionCommit(Doctrine_Event \$event)</code>	<code>Doctrine_Transaction::commit()</code>	
<code>postTransactionCommit(Doctrine_Event \$event)</code>	<code>Doctrine_Transaction::commit()</code>	
<code>preCreateSavepoint(Doctrine_Event \$event)</code>	<code>Doctrine_Transaction::createSavepoint()</code>	savepoint
<code>postCreateSavepoint(Doctrine_Event \$event)</code>	<code>Doctrine_Transaction::createSavepoint()</code>	savepoint
<code>preRollbackSavepoint(Doctrine_Event \$event)</code>	<code>Doctrine_Transaction::rollbackSavepoint()</code>	savepoint
<code>postRollbackSavepoint(Doctrine_Event \$event)</code>	<code>Doctrine_Transaction::rollbackSavepoint()</code>	savepoint
<code>preReleaseSavepoint(Doctrine_Event \$event)</code>	<code>Doctrine_Transaction::releaseSavepoint()</code>	savepoint
<code>postReleaseSavepoint(Doctrine_Event \$event)</code>	<code>Doctrine_Transaction::releaseSavepoint()</code>	savepoint

```
class MyTransactionListener extends Doctrine_EventListener
{
    public function preTransactionBegin(Doctrine_Event $event)
```

Listing  
21-8

```

{
    echo 'beginning transaction... ';
}

public function preTransactionRollback(Doctrine_Event $event)
{
    echo 'rolling back transaction... ';
}
}

```

## Query Execution Listeners

Methods	Listens	Params
prePrepare(Doctrine_Event \$event)	Doctrine_Connection::prepare()	query
postPrepare(Doctrine_Event \$event)	Doctrine_Connection::prepare()	query
preExec(Doctrine_Event \$event)	Doctrine_Connection::exec()	query
postExec(Doctrine_Event \$event)	Doctrine_Connection::exec()	query, rows
preStmtExecute(Doctrine_Event \$event)	Doctrine_Connection_Statement::execute()	query
postStmtExecute(Doctrine_Event \$event)	Doctrine_Connection_Statement::execute()	query
preExecute(Doctrine_Event \$event)	Doctrine_Connection::execute() *	query
postExecute(Doctrine_Event \$event)	Doctrine_Connection::execute() *	query
preFetch(Doctrine_Event \$event)	Doctrine_Connection::fetch()	query, data
postFetch(Doctrine_Event \$event)	Doctrine_Connection::fetch()	query, data
preFetchAll(Doctrine_Event \$event)	Doctrine_Connection::fetchAll()	query, data
postFetchAll(Doctrine_Event \$event)	Doctrine_Connection::fetchAll()	query, data



`preExecute()` and `postExecute()` only get invoked when `Doctrine_Connection::execute()` is being called without prepared statement parameters. Otherwise `Doctrine_Connection::execute()` invokes `prePrepare()`, `postPrepare()`, `preStmtExecute()` and `postStmtExecute()`.

## Hydration Listeners

The hydration listeners can be used for listening to resultset hydration procedures. Two methods exist for listening to the hydration procedure: `preHydrate()` and `postHydrate()`.

If you set the hydration listener on connection level the code within the `preHydrate()` and `postHydrate()` blocks will be invoked by all components within a multi-component resultset. However if you add a similar listener on table level it only gets invoked when the data of that table is being hydrated.

Consider we have a class called `User` with the following fields: `first_name`, `last_name` and `age`. In the following example we create a listener that always builds a generated field called `full_name` based on `first_name` and `last_name` fields.

Listing  
21-9

```
// test.php

// ...
class HydrationListener extends Doctrine_Record_Listener
{
    public function preHydrate(Doctrine_Event $event)
    {
        $data = $event->data;

        $data['full_name'] = $data['first_name'] . ' ' . $data['last_name'];
        $event->data = $data;
    }
}
```

Now all we need to do is attach this listener to the `User` record and fetch some users:

Listing  
21-10

```
// test.php

// ...
$userTable = Doctrine::getTable('User');
$userTable->addRecordListener(new HydrationListener());

$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->from('User');

$users = $q->execute();

foreach ($users as $user) {
    echo $user->full_name;
}
```

## Record Listeners

`Doctrine_Record` provides listeners very similar to `Doctrine_Connection`. You can set the listeners at global, connection and table level.

Here is a list of all available listener methods:

Methods	Listens
<code>preSave(Doctrine_Event \$event)</code>	<code>Doctrine_Record::save()</code>
<code>postSave(Doctrine_Event \$event)</code>	<code>Doctrine_Record::save()</code>
<code>preUpdate(Doctrine_Event \$event)</code>	<code>Doctrine_Record::save()</code> when the record state is DIRTY
<code>postUpdate(Doctrine_Event \$event)</code>	<code>Doctrine_Record::save()</code> when the record state is DIRTY

preInsert(Doctrine_Event \$event)	Doctrine_Record::save() when the record state is TDIRTY
postInsert(Doctrine_Event \$event)	Doctrine_Record::save() when the record state is TDIRTY
preDelete(Doctrine_Event \$event)	Doctrine_Record::delete()
postDelete(Doctrine_Event \$event)	Doctrine_Record::delete()
preValidate(Doctrine_Event \$event)	Doctrine_Validator::validate()
postValidate(Doctrine_Event \$event)	Doctrine_Validator::validate()

Just like with connection listeners there are three ways of defining a record listener: by extending `Doctrine_Record_Listener`, by implementing `Doctrine_Record_Listener_Interface` or by implementing `Doctrine_Overloadable`. In the following we'll create a global level listener by implementing `Doctrine_Overloadable`:

Listing  
21-11

```
class Logger extends Doctrine_Overloadable
{
    public function __call($m, $a)
    {
        echo 'caught event ' . $m;

        // do some logging here...
    }
}
```

Attaching the listener to manager is easy:

Listing  
21-12

```
$manager->addRecordListener(new Logger());
```

Note that by adding a manager level listener it affects on all connections and all tables / records within these connections. In the following we create a connection level listener:

Listing  
21-13

```
class Debugger extends Doctrine_Record_Listener
{
    public function preInsert(Doctrine_Event $event)
    {
        echo 'inserting a record ...';
    }

    public function preUpdate(Doctrine_Event $event)
    {
        echo 'updating a record...';
    }
}
```

Attaching the listener to a connection is as easy as:

```
$conn->addRecordListener(new Debugger());
```

*Listing  
21-14*

Many times you want the listeners to be table specific so that they only apply on the actions on that given table.

Here is an example:

```
class Debugger extends Doctrine_Record_Listener
{
    public function postDelete(Doctrine_Event $event)
    {
        echo 'deleted ' . $event->getInvoker()->id;
    }
}
```

*Listing  
21-15*

Attaching this listener to given table can be done as follows:

```
class MyRecord extends Doctrine_Record
{
    // ...

    public function setUp()
    {
        $this->addListener(new Debugger());
    }
}
```

*Listing  
21-16*

## Record Hooks

Methods	Listens
<code>preSave(Doctrine_Event \$event)</code>	<code>Doctrine_Record::save()</code>
<code>postSave(Doctrine_Event \$event)</code>	<code>Doctrine_Record::save()</code>
<code>preUpdate(Doctrine_Event \$event)</code>	<code>Doctrine_Record::save()</code> when the record state is DIRTY
<code>postUpdate(Doctrine_Event \$event)</code>	<code>Doctrine_Record::save()</code> when the record state is DIRTY
<code>preInsert(Doctrine_Event \$event)</code>	<code>Doctrine_Record::save()</code> when the record state is TDIRTY
<code>postInsert(Doctrine_Event \$event)</code>	<code>Doctrine_Record::save()</code> when the record state is TDIRTY
<code>preDelete(Doctrine_Event \$event)</code>	<code>Doctrine_Record::delete()</code>
<code>postDelete(Doctrine_Event \$event)</code>	<code>Doctrine_Record::delete()</code>

preValidate(Doctrine_Event \$event)	Doctrine_Validator::validate()
postValidate(Doctrine_Event \$event)	Doctrine_Validator::validate()

Here is a simple example where we make use of the `preInsert()` and `preUpdate()` methods:

Listing  
21-17

```
class BlogPost extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('title', 'string', 200);
        $this->hasColumn('content', 'string');
        $this->hasColumn('created', 'date');
        $this->hasColumn('updated', 'date');
    }

    public function preInsert($event)
    {
        $this->created = date141('Y-m-d', time142());
    }

    public function preUpdate($event)
    {
        $this->updated = date143('Y-m-d', time144());
    }
}
```

## DQL Hooks

Doctrine allows you to attach record listeners globally, on each connection, or on specific record instances. `Doctrine_Query` implements `preDql*`() hooks which are checked for on any attached record listeners and checked for on the model instance itself whenever a query is executed. The query will check all models involved in the `from` part of the query for any hooks which can alter the query that invoked the hook.

Here is a list of the hooks you can use with DQL:

Methods	Listens
preDqlSelect(Doctrine_Event \$event)	Doctrine_Query::create()->from('User u')->execute()
preDqlUpdate(Doctrine_Event \$event)	Doctrine_Query::create()->update('User u')->execute()
preDqlDelete(Doctrine_Event \$event)	Doctrine_Query::create()->delete('User u')->execute()

141. <http://www.php.net/function.date>

142. <http://www.php.net/function.time>

143. <http://www.php.net/function.date>

144. <http://www.php.net/function.time>

Below is an example record listener attached directly to the model which will implement the `SoftDelete` functionality for the `User` model.



The `SoftDelete` functionality is included in Doctrine as a behavior. This code is used to demonstrate how to use the select, delete, and update DQL listeners to modify executed queries. You can use the `SoftDelete` behavior by specifying `$this->actAs('SoftDelete')` in your `Doctrine_Record::setUp()` definition.

Listing  
21-18

```
class UserListener extends Doctrine_EventListener
{
    /**
     * Skip the normal delete options so we can override it with our own
     *
     * @param Doctrine_Event $event
     * @return void
     */
    public function preDelete(Doctrine_Event $event)
    {
        $event->skipOperation();
    }

    /**
     * Implement postDelete() hook and set the deleted flag to true
     *
     * @param Doctrine_Event $event
     * @return void
     */
    public function postDelete(Doctrine_Event $event)
    {
        $name = $this->_options['name'];
        $event->getInvoker()->$name = true;
        $event->getInvoker()->save();
    }

    /**
     * Implement preDqlDelete() hook and modify a dql delete query so it updates
the deleted flag
     * instead of deleting the record
     *
     * @param Doctrine_Event $event
     * @return void
     */
    public function preDqlDelete(Doctrine_Event $event)
    {
        $params = $event->getParams();
        $field = $params['alias'] . '.deleted';
        $q = $event->getQuery();
        if ( ! $q->contains($field) ) {
            $q->from('')->update($params['component'] . ' ' . $params['alias']);
            $q->set($field, '?', array(false));
            $q->addWhere($field . ' = ?', array(true));
        }
    }

    /**
     * Implement preDqlDelete() hook and add the deleted flag to all queries for
```

```

which this model
    * is being used in.
    *
    * @param Doctrine_Event $event
    * @return void
    */
    public function preDqlSelect(Doctrine_Event $event)
    {
        $params = $event->getParams();
        $field = $params['alias'] . '.deleted';
        $q = $event->getQuery();
        if ( ! $q->contains($field)) {
            $q->addWhere($field . ' = ?', array(false));
        }
    }
}

```

All of the above methods in the listener could optionally be placed in the user class below. Doctrine will check there for the hooks as well:

Listing  
21-19

```

class User extends Doctrine_Record
{
    // ...

    public function preDqlSelect()
    {
        // ...
    }

    public function preDqlUpdate()
    {
        // ...
    }

    public function preDqlDelete()
    {
        // ...
    }
}

```

In order for these dql callbacks to be checked, you must explicitly turn them on. Because this adds a small amount of overhead for each query, we have it off by default. We already enabled this attribute in an earlier chapter.

Here it is again to refresh your memory:

Listing  
21-20

```

// bootstrap.php

// ...
$manager->setAttribute(Doctrine::ATTR_USE_DQL_CALLBACKS, true);

```



Now when you interact with the User model it will take in to account the deleted flag:

Delete user through record instance:

```
$user = new User();  
$user->username = 'jwage';  
$user->password = 'changeme';  
$user->save();  
$user->delete();
```

Listing  
21-21



The above call to `$user->delete()` does not actually delete the record instead it sets the deleted flag to true.

---

```
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()  
    ->from('User u');  
  
echo $q->getSql();
```

Listing  
21-22

```
SELECT  
u.id AS u__id,  
u.username AS u__username,  
u.password AS u__password,  
u.deleted AS u__deleted  
FROM user u  
WHERE u.deleted = ?
```

Listing  
21-23



Notice how the `"u.deleted = ?"` was automatically added to the where condition with a parameter value of *true*.

---

## Chaining Listeners

Doctrine allows chaining of different event listeners. This means that more than one listener can be attached for listening the same events. The following example attaches two listeners for given connection:

In this example Debugger and Logger both inherit `Doctrine_EventListener`:

```
$conn->addListener(new Debugger());  
$conn->addListener(new Logger());
```

Listing  
21-24

# The Event object

## Getting the Invoker

You can get the object that invoked the event by calling `getInvoker()`:

*Listing  
21-25*

```
class MyListener extends Doctrine_EventListener
{
    public function preExec(Doctrine_Event $event)
    {
        $event->getInvoker(); // Doctrine_Connection
    }
}
```

## Event Codes

`Doctrine_Event` uses constants as event codes. Below is the list of all available event constants:

- `Doctrine_Event::CONN_QUERY`
- `Doctrine_Event::CONN_EXEC`
- `Doctrine_Event::CONN_PREPARE`
- `Doctrine_Event::CONN_CONNECT`
- `Doctrine_Event::STMT_EXECUTE`
- `Doctrine_Event::STMT_FETCH`
- `Doctrine_Event::STMT_FETCHALL`
- `Doctrine_Event::TX_BEGIN`
- `Doctrine_Event::TX_COMMIT`
- `Doctrine_Event::TX_ROLLBACK`
- `Doctrine_Event::SAVEPOINT_CREATE`
- `Doctrine_Event::SAVEPOINT_ROLLBACK`
- `Doctrine_Event::SAVEPOINT_COMMIT`
- `Doctrine_Event::RECORD_DELETE`
- `Doctrine_Event::RECORD_SAVE`
- `Doctrine_Event::RECORD_UPDATE`
- `Doctrine_Event::RECORD_INSERT`
- `Doctrine_Event::RECORD_SERIALIZE`
- `Doctrine_Event::RECORD_UNSERIALIZE`
- `Doctrine_Event::RECORD_DQL_SELECT`
- `Doctrine_Event::RECORD_DQL_DELETE`
- `Doctrine_Event::RECORD_DQL_UPDATE`

Here are some examples of hooks being used and the code that is returned:

*Listing  
21-26*

```
class MyListener extends Doctrine_EventListener
{
    public function preExec(Doctrine_Event $event)
    {
        $event->getCode(); // Doctrine_Event::CONN_EXEC
    }
}
```

```
class MyRecord extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function preUpdate(Doctrine_Event $event)
    {
        $event->getCode(); // Doctrine_Event::RECORD_UPDATE
    }
}
```

## Getting the Invoker

The method `getInvoker()` returns the object that invoked the given event. For example for event `Doctrine_Event::CONN_QUERY` the invoker is a `Doctrine_Connection` object.

Here is an example of using the record hook named `preUpdate()` that is invoked when a `Doctrine_Record` instance is saved and an update is issued to the database:

*Listing  
21-27*

```
class MyRecord extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function preUpdate(Doctrine_Event $event)
    {
        $event->getInvoker(); // Object(MyRecord)
    }
}
```

## Skip Next Operation

`Doctrine_Event` provides many methods for altering the execution of the listened method as well as for altering the behavior of the listener chain.

For some reason you may want to skip the execution of the listened method. It can be done as follows (note that `preExec()` could be any listener method):

*Listing  
21-28*

```
class MyListener extends Doctrine_EventListener
{
    public function preExec(Doctrine_Event $event)
    {
        // some business logic, then:

        $event->skipOperation();
    }
}
```

## Query

## Skip Next Listener

When using a chain of listeners you might want to skip the execution of the next listener. It can be achieved as follows:

Listing  
21-29

```
class MyListener extends Doctrine_EventListener
{
    public function preExec(Doctrine_Event $event)
    {
        // some business logic, then:

        $event->skipNextListener();
    }
}
```

## Conclusion

Event listeners are a great feature in Doctrine and combined with Behaviors they can provide some very complex functionality with a minimal amount of code.

Now we are ready to move on to discuss the best feature in Doctrine for improving performance, Caching.

## Chapter 22

# Caching

## Introduction

`Doctrine_Cache` offers an intuitive and easy-to-use query caching solution. It provides the following things:

- Multiple cache backends to choose from (including Memcached, APC and Sqlite)
- Advanced options for fine-tuning. `Doctrine_Cache` has many options for fine-tuning performance.

All the cache drivers are instantiated like the following:

```
// bootstrap.php

// ...
$options = array();
$cacheDriver = new Doctrine_Cache_Memcache($options);
```

*Listing  
22-1*



Each driver has its own possible values for the `$options` array.

---

## Drivers

### Memcache

Memcache driver stores cache records into a memcached server. Memcached is a high-performance, distributed memory object caching system. In order to use this backend, you need a memcached daemon and the memcache PECL extension.

You can instantiate the Memcache cache driver with the following code:

```
// bootstrap.php

// ...
$servers = array(
```

*Listing  
22-2*

```

        'host' => 'localhost',
        'port' => 11211,
        'persistent' => true
    );

    $cacheDriver = new Doctrine_Cache_Memcache(array(
        'servers' => $servers,
        'compression' => false
    ));

```



Memcache allows multiple servers.

Available options for Memcache driver:

Option	Data Type	Default Value	Description
servers	array	array(array('host' => 'localhost', 'port' => 11211, 'persistent' => true))	An array of memcached servers ; each memcached server is described by an associative array : 'host' => (string) : the name of the memcached server, 'port' => (int) : the port of the memcached server, 'persistent' => (bool) : use or not persistent connections to this memcached server
compression	boolean	false	true if you want to use on-the-fly compression

## APC

The Alternative PHP Cache (APC) is a free and open opcode cache for PHP. It was conceived to provide a free, open, and robust framework for caching and optimizing PHP intermediate code. The APC cache driver of Doctrine stores cache records in shared memory.

You can instantiate the APC cache driver with the following code:

Listing  
22-3

```

// bootstrap.php

// ...
$cacheDriver = new Doctrine_Cache_Apc();

```

## Db

Db caching backend stores cache records into given database. Usually some fast flat-file based database is used (such as sqlite).

You can instantiate the database cache driver with the following code:

Listing  
22-4

```

// bootstrap.php

// ...
$cacheConn = Doctrine_Manager::connection(new PDO('sqlite::memory:'));

```

```
$cacheDriver = new Doctrine_Cache_Db(array('connection' => $cacheConn));
```

## Query Cache & Result Cache

### Introduction

Doctrine provides means for caching the results of the DQL parsing process, as well as the end results of DQL queries (the data). These two caching mechanisms can greatly increase performance. Consider the standard workflow of DQL query execution:

1. Init new DQL query
2. Parse DQL query
3. Build database specific SQL query
4. Execute the SQL query
5. Build the result set
6. Return the result set

Now these phases can be very time consuming, especially phase 4 which sends the query to your database server. When Doctrine query cache is being used only the following phases occur:

1. Init new DQL query
2. Execute the SQL query (grabbed from the cache)
3. Build the result set
4. Return the result set

If a DQL query has a valid cache entry the cached SQL query is used, otherwise the phases 2-3 are executed normally and the result of these steps is then stored in the cache. The query cache has no disadvantages, since you always get a fresh query result.



You should always use query cache in a production environment. That said, you can easily use it during development, too. Whenever you change a DQL query and execute it the first time Doctrine sees that it has been modified and will therefore create a new cache entry, so you don't even need to invalidate the cache.

---

It's worth noting that the effectiveness of the query cache greatly relies on the usage of prepared statements (which are used by Doctrine by default anyway). You should not directly embed dynamic query parts and always use placeholders instead.

When using a result cache things get even better. Then your query process looks as follows (assuming a valid cache entry is found):

1. Init new DQL query
2. Return the result set

As you can see, the result cache implies the query cache shown previously. You should always consider using a result cache if the data returned by the query does not need to be up-to-date at any time.

### Query Cache

#### Using the Query Cache

You can set a connection or manager level query cache driver by using the `Doctrine::ATTR_QUERY_CACHE` attribute. Setting a connection level cache driver means that all queries executed with this connection use the specified cache driver whereas setting

a manager level cache driver means that all connections (unless overridden at connection level) will use the given cache driver.

### Setting a manager level query cache driver:

Listing  
22-5

```
// bootstrap.php

// ...
$manager->setAttribute(Doctrine::ATTR_QUERY_CACHE, $cacheDriver);
```



The value of `$cacheDriver` above could be any of the drivers we instantiated in the previous section of this chapter.

---

### Setting a connection level cache driver:

Listing  
22-6

```
// bootstrap.php

// ...
$conn->setAttribute(Doctrine::ATTR_QUERY_CACHE, $cacheDriver);
```

## Fine Tuning

In the previous chapter we used global caching attributes. These attributes can be overridden at the query level. You can override the cache driver by calling `useQueryCache()` and pass it an instance of a valid Doctrine cache driver. This rarely makes sense for the query cache but is possible:

Listing  
22-7

```
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->useQueryCache(new Doctrine_Cache_Apc());
```

## Result Cache

### Using the Result Cache

You can set a connection or manager level result cache driver by using `Doctrine::ATTR_RESULT_CACHE`. Setting a connection level cache driver means that all queries executed with this connection use the specified cache driver whereas setting a manager level cache driver means that all connections (unless overridden at connection level) will use the given cache driver.

### Setting a manager level cache driver:

Listing  
22-8

```
// bootstrap.php

// ...
$manager->setAttribute(Doctrine::ATTR_RESULT_CACHE, $cacheDriver);
```



**Setting a connection level cache driver:***Listing  
22-9*

```
// bootstrap.php

// ...
$conn->setAttribute(Doctrine::ATTR_RESULT_CACHE, $cacheDriver);
```

Usually the cache entries are valid for only some time. You can set global value for how long the cache entries should be considered valid by using `Doctrine::ATTR_RESULT_CACHE_LIFESPAN`.

**Set the lifespan as one hour (60 seconds \* 60 minutes = 1 hour = 3600 secs):**

*Listing  
22-10*

```
// bootstrap.php

// ...
$manager->setAttribute(Doctrine::ATTR_RESULT_CACHE_LIFESPAN, 3600);
```

Now as we have set a cache driver for use we can make a DQL query use it by calling the `userResultCache()` method:

**Fetch blog post titles and the number of comments:***Listing  
22-11*

```
$q = Doctrine_Query::create();
    ->select('b.title, COUNT(c.id) count')
    ->from('BlogPost b')
    ->leftJoin('b.Comments c')
    ->limit(10)
    ->useResultCache(true);

$blogPosts = $q->execute();
```

**Fine Tuning**

In the previous chapter we used global caching attributes. These attributes can be overridden at the query level. You can override the cache driver by calling `useCache()` and pass it an instance of a valid Doctrine cache driver.

*Listing  
22-12*

```
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->useResultCache(new Doctrine_Cache_Apc());
```

Also you can override the lifespan attribute by calling `setResultCacheLifeSpan()`:

Listing  
22-13

```
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()  
    ->setResultCacheLifetime(60 * 30);
```

## Conclusion

Using the caching feature of Doctrine is highly recommended in both development and production environments. There are no adverse effects to using it and it will only help the performance of your application.

The caching feature is the second to last feature we will discuss in this book before wrapping things up by discussing things like the technologies used in Doctrine, coding standards and unit testing. Let's move on to discuss the last feature of Doctrine, Migrations.

## Chapter 23

# Migrations

The Doctrine migration package allows you to easily update your production databases through a nice programmatic interface. The changes are done in a way so that your database is versioned and you can walk backwards and forwards through the database versions.

## Performing Migrations

Before we learn how to create the migration classes lets take a look at how we can run migrations so that we can implement them in our Doctrine test environment in the next section.

First lets create a new instance of `Doctrine_Migration` and pass it the path to our migration classes:

```
$migration = new Doctrine_Migration('/path/to/migration_classes');
```

*Listing  
23-1*

Now we can migrate to the latest version by calling the `migrate()` method:

```
$migration->migrate();
```

*Listing  
23-2*

If you want to migrate to a specific version you can pass an argument to `migrate()`. For example we can migrate to version 3 from 0:

```
$migration->migrate(3);
```

*Listing  
23-3*

Now you can migrate back to version 0 from 3:

```
$migration->migrate(0);
```

*Listing  
23-4*

If you want to get the current version of the database you can use the `getCurrentVersion()` method:

Listing  
23-5

```
echo $migration->getCurrentVersion();
```



Omitting the version number argument for the `migrate()` method means that internally Doctrine will try and migrate to the latest class version number that it could find in the directory you passed.

---



### Transactions in Migrations

Internally Doctrine does not wrap migration versions in transactions. It is up to you as the developer to handle exceptions and transactions in your migration classes. Remember though, that very few databases support transactional DDL. So on most databases, even if you wrap the migrations in a transaction, any DDL statements like create, alter, drop, rename, etc., will take effect anyway.

---

## Implement

Now that we know how to perform migrations lets implement a little script in our Doctrine test environment named `migrate.php`.

First we need to create a place for our migration classes to be stored so lets create a directory named `migrations`:

Listing  
23-6

```
$ mkdir migrations
```

Now create the `migrate.php` script in your favorite editor and place the following code inside:

Listing  
23-7

```
// migrate.php

require_once('bootstrap.php');

$migration = new Doctrine_Migration('migrations');
$migration->migrate();
```

## Writing Migration Classes

Migration classes consist of a simple class that extends from `Doctrine_Migration`. You can define a `up()` and `down()` method that is meant for doing and undoing changes to a database for that migration version.



The name of the class can be whatever you want, but the name of the file which contains the class must have a prefix containing the version number of the database that class represents.

---

Below are a few examples of some migration classes you can use to build your database starting from version 1.

For the first version lets create a new table named `migration_test`:

*Listing  
23-8*

```
// migrations/001_add_table.php

class AddTable extends Doctrine_Migration
{
    public function up()
    {
        $this->createTable('migration_test', array('field1' => array('type' =>
'string')));
    }

    public function down()
    {
        $this->dropTable('migration_test');
    }
}
```

Now lets create a second version where we add a new column to the table we added in the previous version:

*Listing  
23-9*

```
// migrations/002_add_column.php

class AddColumn extends Doctrine_Migration
{
    public function up()
    {
        $this->addColumn('migration_test', 'field2', 'string');
    }

    public function down()
    {
        $this->removeColumn('migration_test', 'field2');
    }
}
```

Finally, lets change the type of the `field1` column in the table we created previously:

*Listing  
23-10*

```
// migrations/003_change_column.php

class ChangeColumn extends Doctrine_Migration
{
    public function up()
    {
        $this->changeColumn('migration_test', 'field2', 'integer');
    }

    public function down()
```

```

    {
        $this->changeColumn('migration_test', 'field2', 'string');
    }
}

```

Now that we have created the three migration classes above we can run our `migrate.php` script we implemented earlier:

*Listing 23-11* `$ php migrate.php`

If you look in the database you will see that we have the table named `migrate_test` created and the version number in the `migration_version` is set to three.

If you want to migrate back to where we started you can pass a version number to the `migrate()` method in the `migrate.php` script:

*Listing 23-12*

```

// migrate.php

// ...
$migration = new Doctrine_Migration('migrations');
$migration->migrate(0);

```

Now run the `migrate.php` script:

*Listing 23-13* `$ php migrate.php`

If you look in the database now, everything we did in the `up()` methods has been reversed by the contents of the `down()` method.

## Available Operations

Here is a list of the available methods you can use to alter your database in your migration classes.

### Create Table

*Listing 23-14*

```

// ...
public function up()
{
    $columns = array(
        'id' => array(
            'type' => 'integer',
            'unsigned' => 1
            'notnull' => 1
            'default' => 0
        ),
        'name' => array(
            'type' => 'text',
            'length' => 12
        ),
        'password' => array(

```

```

        'type' => 'text',
        'length' => 12
    )
);

$options = array(
    'type'      => 'INNODB',
    'charset'   => 'utf8'
);

$this->createTable('table_name', $columns, $options);
}
// ...

```



You might notice already that the data structures used to manipulate the your schema are the same as the data structures used with the database abstraction layer. This is because internally the migration package uses the database abstraction layer to perform the operations specified in the migration classes.

## Drop Table

*Listing  
23-15*

```

// ...
public function down()
{
    $this->dropTable('table_name');
}
// ...

```

## Rename Table

*Listing  
23-16*

```

// ...
public function up()
{
    $this->renameTable('old_table_name', 'new_table_name');
}
// ...

```

## Create Constraint

*Listing  
23-17*

```

// ...
public function up()
{
    $definition = array(
        'fields' => array(
            'username' => array()
        ),
    ),

```

```

        'unique' => true
    );

    $this->createConstraint('table_name', 'constraint_name', $definition);
}
// ...

```

## Drop Constraint

**Now the opposite `down()` would look like the following:**

Listing  
23-18

```

// ...
public function down()
{
    $this->dropConstraint('table_name', 'constraint_name');
}
// ...

```

## Create Foreign Key

Listing  
23-19

```

// ...
public function up()
{
    $definition = array(
        'name'          => 'email_foreign_key'
        'local'         => 'email_id',
        'foreign'        => 'id',
        'foreignTable'   => 'email',
        'onDelete'       => 'CASCADE'
    );

    $this->createForeignKey('table_name', $definition);
}
// ...

```

The valid options for the `$definition` are:

Name	Description
name	Optional constraint name
local	The local field(s)
foreign	The foreign reference field(s)
foreignTable	The name of the foreign table
onDelete	Referential delete action
onUpdate	Referential update action
deferred	Deferred constraint checking



## Drop Foreign Key

Listing  
23-20

```
// ...
    public function down()
    {
        $this->dropForeignKey('table_name', 'email_foreign_key');
    }
// ...
```

## Add Column

Listing  
23-21

```
// ...
    public function up()
    {
        $this->addColumn('table_name', 'column_name', 'string', $options);
    }
// ...
```

## Rename Column



Some DBMS like sqlite do not implement the rename column operation. An exception is thrown if you try and rename a column when using a sqlite connection.

Listing  
23-22

```
// ...
    public function up()
    {
        $this->renameColumn('table_name', 'old_column_name', 'new_column_name');
    }
// ...
```

## Change Column

### Change any aspect of an existing column:

Listing  
23-23

```
// ...
    public function up()
    {
        $options = array('length' => 1);
        $this->changeColumn('table_name', 'column_name', 'tinyint', $options);
    }
// ...
```

## Remove Column

Listing  
23-24

```
// ...
    public function up()
    {
        $this->removeColumn('table_name', 'column_name');
    }
// ...
```

## Irreversible Migration



Sometimes you may perform some operations in the `up()` method that cannot be reversed. For example if you remove a column from a table. In this case you need to throw a new `Doctrine_Migration_IrreversibleMigrationException` exception.

Listing  
23-25

```
// ...
    public function down()
    {
        throw new Doctrine_Migration_IrreversibleMigrationException(
            'The remove column operation cannot be undone!'
        );
    }
// ...
```

## Add Index

Listing  
23-26

```
// ...
    public function up()
    {
        $options = array('fields' => array(
            'username' => array(
                'sorting' => 'ascending'
            ),
            'last_login' => array());

        $this->addIndex('table_name', 'index_name', $options)
    }
// ...
```

## Remove Index

Listing  
23-27

```
// ...
    public function down()
    {
        $this->removeIndex('table_name', 'index_name');
    }
```

```
// ...
```

## Pre and Post Hooks

Sometimes you may need to alter the data in the database with your models. Since you may create a table or make a change, you have to do the data altering after the `up()` or `down()` method is processed. We have hooks in place for this named `preUp()`, `postUp()`, `preDown()`, and `postDown()`. Define these methods and they will be triggered:

*Listing  
23-28*

```
// migrations/001_add_table.php

class AddTable extends Doctrine_Migration
{
    public function up()
    {
        $this->createTable('migration_test', array('field1' => array('type' =>
'string')));
    }

    public function postUp()
    {
        $migrationTest = new MigrationTest();
        $migrationTest->field1 = 'Initial record created by migrations';
        $migrationTest->save();
    }

    public function down()
    {
        $this->dropTable('migration_test');
    }
}
```



The above example assumes you have created and made available the `MigrationTest` model. Once the `up()` method is executed the `migration_test` table is created so the `MigrationTest` model can be used. We have provided the definition of this model below.

*Listing  
23-29*

```
// models/MigrationTest.php

class MigrationTest extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('field1', 'string');
    }
}
```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

*Listing 23-30* # schema.yml

```
# ...
MigrationTest:
  columns:
    field1: string
```

## Conclusion

Using migrations is highly recommended for altering your production database schemas as it is a safe and easy way to make changes to your schema.

Migrations are the last feature of Doctrine that we will discuss in this book. The final chapters will discuss some other topics that will help you be a better Doctrine developers on a day-to-day basis. First lets discuss some of the other Utilities that Doctrine provides.

## Chapter 24

# Utilities

## Pagination

### Introduction

In real world applications, display content from database tables is a common task. Also, imagine that this content is a search result containing thousands of items. Undoubtedly, it will be a huge listing, memory expensive and hard for users to find the right item. That is where some organization of this content display is needed and pagination comes in rescue.

Doctrine implements a highly flexible pager package, allowing you to not only split listing in pages, but also enabling you to control the layout of page links. In this chapter, we'll learn how to create pager objects, control pager styles and at the end, overview the pager layout object - a powerful page links displayer of Doctrine.

### Working with Pager

Paginating queries is as simple as effectively do the queries itself. `Doctrine_Pager` is the responsible to process queries and paginate them. Check out this small piece of code:

```
// Defining initial variables
$currentPage = 1;
$resultsPerPage = 50;

// Creating pager object
$pager = new Doctrine_Pager(
    Doctrine_Query::create()
        ->from( 'User u' )
        ->leftJoin( 'u.Group g' )
        ->orderBy( 'u.username ASC' ),
    $currentPage, // Current page of request
    $resultsPerPage // (Optional) Number of results per page. Default is 25
);
```

*Listing  
24-1*

Until this place, the source you have is the same as the old `Doctrine_Query` object. The only difference is that now you have 2 new arguments. Your old query object plus these 2 arguments are now encapsulated by the `Doctrine_Pager` object. At this stage,

`Doctrine_Pager` defines the basic data needed to control pagination. If you want to know that actual status of the pager, all you have to do is to check if it's already executed:

Listing  
24-2

```
$pager->getExecuted();
```

If you try to access any of the methods provided by `Doctrine_Pager` now, you'll experience `Doctrine_Pager_Exception` thrown, reporting you that Pager was not yet executed. When executed, `Doctrine_Pager` offer you powerful methods to retrieve information. The API usage is listed at the end of this topic.

To run the query, the process is similar to the current existent `Doctrine_Query` execute call. It even allow arguments the way you usually do it. Here is the PHP complete syntax, including the syntax of optional parameters:

Listing  
24-3

```
$items = $pager->execute([$args = array() [, $fetchType = null]]);

foreach ($items as $item) {
    // ...
}
```

There are some special cases where the return records query differ of the counter query. To allow this situation, `Doctrine_Pager` has some methods that enable you to count and then to execute. The first thing you have to do is to define the count query:

Listing  
24-4

```
$pager->setCountQuery($query [, $params = null]);

// ...

$rs = $pager->execute();
```

The first param of `setCountQuery` can be either a valid `Doctrine_Query` object or a DQL string. The second argument you can define the optional parameters that may be sent in the counter query. If you do not define the params now, you're still able to define it later by calling the `setCountQueryParams`:

Listing  
24-5

```
$pager->setCountQueryParams([$params = array() [, $append = false]]);
```

This method accepts 2 parameters. The first one is the params to be sent in count query and the second parameter is if the `$params` should be appended to the list or if it should override the list of count query parameters. The default behavior is to override the list. One last thing to mention about count query is, if you do not define any parameter for count query, it will still send the parameters you define in `$pager->execute()` call.

Count query is always enabled to be accessed. If you do not define it and call `$pager->getCountQuery()`, it will return the "fetcher" query to you.

If you need access the other functionalities that `Doctrine_Pager` provides, you can access them through the API:

*Listing  
24-6*

```
// Returns the check if Pager was already executed
$pager->getExecuted();

// Return the total number of itens found on query search
$pager->getNumResults();

// Return the first page (always 1)
$pager->getFirstPage();

// Return the total number of pages
$pager->getLastPage();

// Return the current page
$pager->getPage();

// Defines a new current page (need to call execute again to adjust offsets and
values)
$pager->setPage($page);

// Return the next page
$pager->getNextPage();

// Return the previous page
$pager->getPreviousPage();

// Return the first indice of current page
$pager->getFirstIndice();

// Return the last indice of current page
$pager->getLastIndice();

// Return true if it's necessary to paginate or false if not
$pager->haveToPaginate();

// Return the maximum number of records per page
$pager->getMaxPerPage();

// Defined a new maximum number of records per page (need to call execute again to
adjust offset and values)
$pager->setMaxPerPage($maxPerPage);

// Returns the number of itens in current page
$pager->getResultsInPage();

// Returns the Doctrine_Query object that is used to make the count results to
pager
$pager->getCountQuery();

// Defines the counter query to be used by pager
$pager->setCountQuery($query, $params = null);

// Returns the params to be used by counter Doctrine_Query (return $defaultParams
if no param is defined)
$pager->getCountQueryParams($defaultParams = array());
```

```
// Defines the params to be used by counter Doctrine_Query
$pager->setCountQueryParams($params = array(), $append = false);

// Return the Doctrine_Query object
$pager->getQuery();

// Return an associated Doctrine_Pager_Range_* instance
$pager->getRange($rangeStyle, $options = array());
```

## Controlling Range Styles

There are some cases where simple paginations are not enough. One example situation is when you want to write page links listings. To enable a more powerful control over pager, there is a small subset of pager package that allows you to create ranges.

Currently, Doctrine implements two types (or styles) of ranges: Sliding (Doctrine\_Pager\_Range\_Sliding) and Jumping (Doctrine\_Pager\_Range\_Jumping).

### Sliding

Sliding page range style, the page range moves smoothly with the current page. The current page is always in the middle, except in the first and last pages of the range. Check out how does it work with a chunk length of 5 items:

*Listing 24-7*

```
Listing 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14
Page 1: 0-----|
Page 2: |-0-----|
Page 3: |--0----|
Page 4:  |---0---|
Page 5:   |---0---|
Page 6:    |---0---|
Page 7:     |---0---|
Page 8:      |---0---|
```

### Jumping

In Jumping page range style, the range of page links is always one of a fixed set of "frames": 1-5, 6-10, 11-15, and so on.

*Listing 24-8*

```
Listing 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14
Page 1: 0-----|
Page 2: |-0-----|
Page 3: |--0----|
Page 4: |-----0-|
Page 5: |-----0
Page 6:           0-----|
Page 7:           |-0-----|
Page 8:           |---0----|
```

Now that we know how the different of styles of pager range works, it's time to learn how to use them:

*Listing 24-9*

```
$pagerRange = new Doctrine_Pager_Range_Sliding(
    array(
```



```

        'chunk' => 5 // Chunk length
    ),
    $pager // Doctrine_Pager object we learned how to create in previous topic
);

```

Alternatively, you can use:

```

$pagerRange = $pager->getRange(
    'Sliding',
    array(
        'chunk' => 5
    )
);

```

*Listing  
24-10*

What is the advantage to use this object, instead of the `Doctrine_Pager`? Just one; it allows you to retrieve ranges around the current page.

Look at the example:

```

// Retrieves the range around the current page
// In our example, we are using sliding style and we are at page 1
$pages = $pager_range->rangeAroundPage();

// Outputs: [1][2][3][4][5]
echo '[' . implode145('')[',', $pages) . '']';

```

*Listing  
24-11*

If you build your `Doctrine_Pager` inside the range object, the API gives you enough power to retrieve information related to `Doctrine_Pager_Range` subclass instance:

```

// Return the Pager associated to this Pager_Range
$pager_range->getPager();

// Defines a new Doctrine_Pager (automatically call _initialize protected method)
$pager_range->setPager($pager);

// Return the options assigned to the current Pager_Range
$pager_range->getOptions();

// Returns the custom Doctrine_Pager_Range implementation offset option
$pager_range->getOption($option);

// Check if a given page is in the range
$pager_range->isInRange($page);

// Return the range around the current page (obtained from Doctrine_Pager
// associated to the $pager_range instance)
$pager_range->rangeAroundPage();

```

*Listing  
24-12*

---

<sup>145</sup>. <http://www.php.net/function.implode>

## Advanced layouts with pager

Until now, we learned how to create paginations and how to retrieve ranges around the current page. To abstract the business logic involving the page links generation, there is a powerful component called `Doctrine_Pager_Layout`. The main idea of this component is to abstract php logic and only leave HTML to be defined by Doctrine developer.

`Doctrine_Pager_Layout` accepts 3 obligatory arguments: a `Doctrine_Pager` instance, a `Doctrine_Pager_Range` subclass instance and a string which is the URL to be assigned as `{%url}` mask in templates. As you may see, there are two types of "variables" in `Doctrine_Pager_Layout`:

### Mask

A piece of string that is defined inside template as replacements. They are defined as **`{%mask_name}`** and are replaced by what you define in options or what is defined internally by `Doctrine_Pager_Layout` component. Currently, these are the internal masks available:

- **`{%page}`** Holds the page number, exactly as `page_number`, but can be overwritable by `addMaskReplacement()` to behavior like another mask or value
- **`{%page_number}`** Stores the current page number, but cannot be overwritable
- **`{%url}`** Available only in `setTemplate()` and `setSelectedTemplate()` methods. Holds the processed URL, which was defined in constructor

### Template

As the name explains itself, it is the skeleton of HTML or any other resource that is applied to each page returned by `Doctrine_Pager_Range::rangeAroundPage()` subclasses. There are 3 distinct templates that can be defined:

- `setTemplate()` Defines the template that can be used in all pages returned by `Doctrine_Pager_Range::rangeAroundPage()` subclass call
- `setSelectedTemplate()` Template that is applied when it is the page to be processed is the current page you are. If nothing is defined (a blank string or no definition), the template you defined in `setTemplate()` is used
- `setSeparatorTemplate()` Separator template is the string that is applied between each processed page. It is not included before the first call and after the last one. The defined template of this method is not affected by options and also it cannot process masks

Now we know how to create the `Doctrine_Pager_Layout` and the types that are around this component, it is time to view the basic usage:

Creating the pager layout is simple:

Listing  
24-13

```
$pagerLayout = new Doctrine_Pager_Layout(
    new Doctrine_Pager(
        Doctrine_Query::create()
            ->from( 'User u' )
            ->leftJoin( 'u.Group g' )
            ->orderBy( 'u.username ASC' ),
        $currentPage,
        $resultsPerPage
    ),
```

```

        new Doctrine_Pager_Range_Sliding(array(
            'chunk' => 5
        )),
        'http://www.domain.com/app/User/list/page,{%page_number}'
    );

```

Assigning templates for page links creation:

*Listing  
24-14*

```

$pagerLayout->setTemplate('<a href="{%url}">{%page}</a>');
$pagerLayout->setSelectedTemplate('{%page}');

// Retrieving Doctrine_Pager instance
$pager = $pagerLayout->getPager();

// Fetching users
$users = $pager->execute(); // This is possible too!

// Displaying page links
// Displays: [1][2][3][4][5]
// With links in all pages, except the $currentPage (our example, page 1)
$pagerLayout->display();

```

Explaining this source, the first part creates the pager layout instance. Second, it defines the templates for all pages and for the current page. The last part, it retrieves the `Doctrine_Pager` object and executes the query, returning in variable `$users`. The last part calls the `display` without any optional mask, which applies the template in all pages found by `Doctrine_Pager_Range::rangeAroundPage()` subclass call.

As you may see, there is no need to use other masks except the internal ones. Let's suppose we implement a new functionality to search for Users in our existent application, and we need to support this feature in pager layout too. To simplify our case, the search parameter is named "search" and is received through `$_GET` superglobal array. The first change we need to do is to adjust the `Doctrine_Query` object and also the URL, to allow it to be sent to other pages.

Creating the pager layout:

*Listing  
24-15*

```

$pagerLayout = new Doctrine_Pager_Layout(
    new Doctrine_Pager(
        Doctrine_Query::create()
            ->from( 'User u' )
            ->leftJoin( 'u.Group g' )
            ->where( 'LOWER(u.username) LIKE LOWER(?)', array(
                '%'.$_GET['search'].'%' ) )
            ->orderBy( 'u.username ASC' ),
        $currentPage,
        $resultsPerPage
    ),
    new Doctrine_Pager_Range_Sliding(array(
        'chunk' => 5
    )),
    'http://www.domain.com/app/User/list/page,{%page_number}?search={%search}'
);

```

Check out the code and notice we added a new mask, called `{%search}`. We'll need to send it to the template processing at a later stage. We then assign the templates, just as defined before, without any change. And also, we do not need to change execution of query.

Assigning templates for page links creation:

Listing  
24-16

```
$pagerLayout->setTemplate(' [<a href="{%url}">{%page}</a> ] ');
$pagerLayout->setSelectedTemplate(' [{%page}] ');

// Fetching users
$users = $pagerLayout->execute();

foreach ($users as $user) {
    // ...
}
```

The method `display()` is the place where we define the custom mask we created. This method accepts 2 optional arguments: one array of optional masks and if the output should be returned instead of printed on screen. In our case, we need to define a new mask, the `{%search}`, which is the search offset of `$_GET` superglobal array. Also, remember that since it'll be sent as URL, it needs to be encoded. Custom masks are defined in key => value pairs. So all needed code is to define an array with the offset we desire and the value to be replaced:

Listing  
24-17

```
// Displaying page links
$pagerLayout->display( array(
    'search' => urlencode146($_GET['search'])
) );
```

`Doctrine_Pager_Layout` component offers accessors to defined resources. There is not need to define pager and pager range as variables and send to the pager layout. These instances can be retrieved by these accessors:

Listing  
24-18

```
// Return the Pager associated to the Pager_Layout
$pagerLayout->getPager();

// Return the Pager_Range associated to the Pager_Layout
$pagerLayout->getPagerRange();

// Return the URL mask associated to the Pager_Layout
$pagerLayout->getUrlMask();

// Return the template associated to the Pager_Layout
$pagerLayout->getTemplate();

// Return the current page template associated to the Pager_Layout
```

---

<sup>146</sup>. <http://www.php.net/function.urlencode>

```

$pagerLayout->getSelectedTemplate();

// Defines the Separator template, applied between each page
$pagerLayout->setSeparatorTemplate($separatorTemplate);

// Return the current page template associated to the Pager_Layout
$pagerLayout->getSeparatorTemplate();

// Handy method to execute the query without need to retrieve the Pager instance
$pagerLayout->execute($params = array(), $hydrationMode = null);

```

There are a couple of other methods that are available if you want to extend the `Doctrine_Pager_Layout` to create your custom layout. We will see these methods in the next section.

## Customizing pager layout

`Doctrine_Pager_Layout` does a really good job, but sometimes it is not enough. Let's suppose a situation where you have to create a layout of pagination like this one:

```
<< < 1 2 3 4 5 > >>
```

Currently, it is impossible with raw `Doctrine_Pager_Layout`. But if you extend it and use the available methods, you can achieve it. The base Layout class provides you some methods that can be used to create your own implementation. They are:

*Listing  
24-19*

```

// $this refers to an instance of Doctrine_Pager_Layout

// Defines a mask replacement. When parsing template, it converts replacement
// masks into new ones (or values), allowing to change masks behavior on the fly
$this->addMaskReplacement($oldMask, $newMask, $asValue = false);

// Remove a mask replacement
$this->removeMaskReplacement($oldMask);

// Remove all mask replacements
$this->cleanMaskReplacements();

// Parses the template and returns the string of a processed page
$this->processPage($options = array()); // Needs at least page_number offset in
$options array

// Protected methods, although very useful

// Parse the template of a given page and return the processed template
$this->_parseTemplate($options = array());

// Parse the url mask to return the correct template depending of the options sent
// Already process the mask replacements assigned
$this->_parseUrlTemplate($options = array());

// Parse the mask replacements of a given page
$this->_parseReplacementsTemplate($options = array());

// Parse the url mask of a given page and return the processed url
$this->_parseUrl($options = array());

```

```
// Parse the mask replacements, changing from to-be replaced mask with new masks/
values
$this->_parseMaskReplacements($str);
```

Now that you have a small tip of useful methods to be used when extending `Doctrine_Pager_Layout`, it's time to see our implemented class:

Listing  
24-20

```
class PagerLayoutWithArrows extends Doctrine_Pager_Layout
{
    public function display($options = array(), $return = false)
    {
        $pager = $this->getPager();
        $str = '';

        // First page
        $this->addMaskReplacement('page', '&laquo;', true);
        $options['page_number'] = $pager->getFirstPage();
        $str .= $this->processPage($options);

        // Previous page
        $this->addMaskReplacement('page', '&lsaquo;', true);
        $options['page_number'] = $pager->getPreviousPage();
        $str .= $this->processPage($options);

        // Pages listing
        $this->removeMaskReplacement('page');
        $str .= parent::display($options, true);

        // Next page
        $this->addMaskReplacement('page', '&rsaquo;', true);
        $options['page_number'] = $pager->getNextPage();
        $str .= $this->processPage($options);

        // Last page
        $this->addMaskReplacement('page', '&raquo;', true);
        $options['page_number'] = $pager->getLastPage();
        $str .= $this->processPage($options);

        // Possible wish to return value instead of print it on screen
        if ($return) {
            return $str;
        }

        echo $str;
    }
}
```

As you may see, I have to manual process the items `<<`, `<`, `>` and `>>`. I override the **{%page}** mask by setting a raw value to it (raw value is achieved by setting the third parameter as true). Then I define the only MUST HAVE information to process the page and call it. The return is the template processed as a string. I do it to any of my custom buttons.

Now supposing a totally different situation. Doctrine is framework agnostic, but many of our users use it together with Symfony. Doctrine\_Pager and subclasses are 100% compatible with Symfony, but Doctrine\_Pager\_Layout needs some tweaks to get it working with Symfony's `link_to` helper function. To allow this usage with Doctrine\_Pager\_Layout, you have to extend it and add your custom processor over it. For example purpose (it works in Symfony), I used `{link_to}...{/link_to}` as a template processor to do this job. Here is the extended class and usage in Symfony:

Listing  
24-21

```
class sfDoctrinePagerLayout extends Doctrine_Pager_Layout
{
    public function __construct($pager, $pagerRange, $urlMask)
    {
        sfLoader::loadHelpers(array('Url', 'Tag'));
        parent::__construct($pager, $pagerRange, $urlMask);
    }

    protected function _parseTemplate($options = array())
    {
        $str = parent::_parseTemplate($options);

        return preg_replace147(
            '/\{link_to\}(.*?)\{\/link_to\}/', link_to148('{$1}',
$this->_parseUrl($options)), $str
        );
    }
}
```

Usage:

Listing  
24-22

```
$pagerLayout = new sfDoctrinePagerLayout(
    $pager,
    new Doctrine_Pager_Range_Sliding(array('chunk' => 5)),
    '@hostHistoryList?page={%page_number}'
);

$pagerLayout->setTemplate('{{link_to}}{%page}{/link_to}');
```

## Facade

### Creating & Dropping Databases

Doctrine offers the ability to create and drop your databases from your defined Doctrine connections. The only trick to using it is that the name of your Doctrine connection must be the name of your database. This is required due to the fact that PDO does not offer a method for retrieving the name of the database you are connected to. So in order to create and drop the database Doctrine itself must be aware of the name of the database.

<sup>147</sup>. [http://www.php.net/function.preg\\_replace](http://www.php.net/function.preg_replace)

<sup>148</sup>. [http://www.php.net/function.link\\_to](http://www.php.net/function.link_to)

## Convenience Methods

Doctrine offers static convenience methods available in the main Doctrine class. These methods perform some of the most used functionality of Doctrine with one method. Most of these methods are using in the Doctrine\_Task system. These tasks are also what are executed from the Doctrine\_Cli.

Listing  
24-23

```
// Turn debug on/off and check for whether it is on/off
Doctrine::debug(true);

if (Doctrine::debug()) {
    echo 'debugging is on';
} else {
    echo 'debugging is off';
}

// Get the path to your Doctrine libraries
$path = Doctrine::getPath();

// Load your models so that they are present and loaded for Doctrine to work with
// Returns an array of the Doctrine_Records that were found and loaded
$models = Doctrine::loadModels('/path/to/models',
Doctrine::MODEL_LOADING_CONSERVATIVE); // or Doctrine::MODEL_LOADING_AGGRESSIVE
print_r149($models);

// Get array of all the models loaded and present to Doctrine
$models = Doctrine::getLoadedModels();

// Pass an array of classes to the above method and it will filter out the ones
that are not Doctrine_Records
$models = Doctrine::filterInvalidModels(array('User', 'Formatter',
'Doctrine_Record'));
print_r150($models); // would return array('User') because Formatter and
Doctrine_Record are not valid

// Get Doctrine_Connection object for an actual table name
$conn = Doctrine::getConnectionByTableName('user'); // returns the connection
object that the table name is associated
with.

// Generate YAML schema from an existing database
Doctrine::generateYamlFromDb('/path/to/dump/schema.yml', array('connection_name'),
$options);

// Generate your models from an existing database
Doctrine::generateModelsFromDb('/path/to/generate/models',
array('connection_name'), $options);

// Array of options and the default values
$options = array('packagesPrefix'      => 'Package',
                 'packagesPath'        => '',
                 'packagesFolderName'  => 'packages',
                 'suffix'              => '.php',
                 'generateBaseClasses' => true,
```

149. [http://www.php.net/function.print\\_r](http://www.php.net/function.print_r)

150. [http://www.php.net/function.print\\_r](http://www.php.net/function.print_r)



```

        'baseClassesPrefix'    => 'Base',
        'baseClassesDirectory' => 'generated',
        'baseClassName'       => 'Doctrine_Record');

// Generate your models from YAML schema
Doctrine::generateModelsFromYaml('/path/to/schema.yml', '/path/to/generate/
models', $options);

// Create the tables supplied in the array
Doctrine::createTablesFromArray(array('User', 'Phonenumber'));

// Create all your tables from an existing set of models
// Will generate sql for all loaded models if no directory is given
Doctrine::createTablesFromModels('/path/to/models');

// Generate string of sql commands from an existing set of models
// Will generate sql for all loaded models if no directory is given
Doctrine::generateSqlFromModels('/path/to/models');

// Generate array of sql statements to create the array of passed models
Doctrine::generateSqlFromArray(array('User', 'Phonenumber'));

// Generate YAML schema from an existing set of models
Doctrine::generateYamlFromModels('/path/to/schema.yml', '/path/to/models');

// Create all databases for connections.
// Array of connection names is optional
Doctrine::createDatabases(array('connection_name'));

// Drop all databases for connections
// Array of connection names is optional
Doctrine::dropDatabases(array('connection_name'));

// Dump all data for your models to a yaml fixtures file
// 2nd argument is a bool value for whether or not to generate individual fixture
files for each model. If true you need
// to specify a folder instead of a file.
Doctrine::dumpData('/path/to/dump/data.yml', true);

// Load data from yaml fixtures files
// 2nd argument is a bool value for whether or not to append the data when loading
or delete all data first before loading
Doctrine::loadData('/path/to/fixture/files', true);

// Run a migration process for a set of migration classes
$num = 5; // migrate to version #5
Doctrine::migration('/path/to/migrations', $num);

// Generate a blank migration class template
Doctrine::generateMigrationClass('ClassName', '/path/to/migrations');

// Generate all migration classes for an existing database
Doctrine::generateMigrationsFromDb('/path/to/migrations');

// Generate all migration classes for an existing set of models
// 2nd argument is optional if you have already loaded your models using
loadModel()
Doctrine::generateMigrationsFromModels('/path/to/migrations', '/path/to/models');

```

```
// Get Doctrine_Table instance for a model
$userTable = Doctrine::getTable('User');

// Compile doctrine in to a single php file
$drivers = array('mysql'); // specify the array of drivers you want to include in
this compiled version
Doctrine::compile('/path/to/write/compiled/doctrine', $drivers);

// Dump doctrine objects for debugging
$conn = Doctrine_Manager::connection();
Doctrine::dump($conn);
```

## Tasks

Tasks are classes which bundle some of the core convenience methods in to tasks that can be easily executed by setting the required arguments. These tasks are directly used in the Doctrine command line interface.

*Listing  
24-24*

```
BuildAll
BuildAllLoad
BuildAllReload
Compile
CreateDb
CreateTables
Dql
DropDb
DumpData
Exception
GenerateMigration
GenerateMigrationsDb
GenerateMigrationsModels
GenerateModelsDb
GenerateModelsYaml
GenerateSql
GenerateYamlDb
GenerateYamlModels
LoadData
Migrate
RebuildDb
```

You can read below about how to execute Doctrine Tasks standalone in your own scripts.

## Command Line Interface

### Introduction

The Doctrine Cli is a collection of tasks that help you with your day to do development and testing with your Doctrine implementation. Typically with the examples in this manual, you setup php scripts to perform whatever tasks you may need. This Cli tool is aimed at providing an out of the box solution for those tasks.

## Tasks

Below is a list of available tasks for managing your Doctrine implementation.

```
$ ./doctrine
Doctrine Command Line Interface

./doctrine build-all
./doctrine build-all-load
./doctrine build-all-reload
./doctrine compile
./doctrine create-db
./doctrine create-tables
./doctrine dql
./doctrine drop-db
./doctrine dump-data
./doctrine generate-migration
./doctrine generate-migrations-db
./doctrine generate-migrations-models
./doctrine generate-models-db
./doctrine generate-models-yaml
./doctrine generate-sql
./doctrine generate-yaml-db
./doctrine generate-yaml-models
./doctrine load-data
./doctrine migrate
./doctrine rebuild-db
```

*Listing  
24-25*

The tasks for the CLI are separate from the CLI and can be used standalone. Below is an example.

```
$task = new Doctrine_Task_GenerateModelsFromYaml();

$args = array('yaml_schema_path' => '/path/to/schema',
              'models_path'      => '/path/to/models');

$task->setArguments($args);

try {
    if ($task->validate()) {
        $task->execute();
    }
} catch (Exception $e) {
    throw new Doctrine_Exception($e->getMessage());
}
```

*Listing  
24-26*

## Usage

File named "doctrine" that is set to executable

```
#!/usr/bin/env php
<?php

chdir(dirname(__FILE__));
include('doctrine.php');
```

*Listing  
24-27*

?>

Actual php file named "doctrine.php" that implements the Doctrine\_Cli.

Listing  
24-28

```
// Include your Doctrine configuration/setup here, your connections, models, etc.

// Configure Doctrine Cli
// Normally these are arguments to the cli tasks but if they are set here the
// arguments will be auto-filled and are not required for you to enter them.

$config = array('data_fixtures_path' => '/path/to/data/fixtures',
               'models_path'        => '/path/to/models',
               'migrations_path'    => '/path/to/migrations',
               'sql_path'           => '/path/to/data/sql',
               'yaml_schema_path'   => '/path/to/schema');

$cli = new Doctrine_Cli($config);
$cli->run($_SERVER['argv']);
```

Now you can begin executing commands.

Listing  
24-29

```
./doctrine generate-models-yaml
./doctrine create-tables
```

## Sandbox

### Installation

You can install the sandbox by downloading the special sandbox package from <http://www.phpdoctrine.org/download><sup>151</sup> or you can install it via svn below.

Listing  
24-30

```
svn co http://www.phpdoctrine.org/svn/branches/0.11 doctrine
cd doctrine/tools/sandbox
chmod 0777 doctrine

./doctrine
```

The above steps should give you a functioning sandbox. Execute the `./doctrine` command without specifying a task will show you an index of all the available cli tasks in Doctrine.

## Conclusion

I hope some of these utilities discussed in this chapter are of use to you. Now lets discuss how Doctrine maintains stability and avoids regressions by using Unit Testing.

---

151. <http://www.phpdoctrine.org/download>

## Chapter 25

# Unit Testing

Doctrine is programmatically tested using UnitTests. You can read more about unit testing here<sup>152</sup> on Wikipedia.

## Running tests

In order to run the tests that come with doctrine you need to check out the entire project, not just the lib folder.

```
$ svn co http://svn.doctrine-project.org/1.0 /path/to/co/doctrine
```

*Listing  
25-1*

Now change directory to the checked out copy of doctrine.

```
$ cd /path/to/co/doctrine
```

*Listing  
25-2*

You should see the following files and directories listed.

```
CHANGELOG
COPYRIGHT
lib/
LICENSE
package.xml
tests/
tools/
vendor/
```

*Listing  
25-3*



It is not uncommon for the test suite to have fails that we are aware of. Often Doctrine will have test cases for bugs or enhancement requests that cannot be committed until later versions. Or we simply don't have a fix for the issue yet and the test remains failing. You can ask on the mailing list or in IRC for how many fails should be expected in each version of Doctrine.

---

## CLI

To run tests on the command line, you must have php-cli installed.

Navigate to the `/path/to/co/doctrine/tests` folder and execute the `run.php` script:

*Listing  
25-4*

---

152. [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Unit\\_testing](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Unit_testing)

```
$ cd /path/to/co/doctrine/tests
$ php run.php
```

This will print out a progress bar as it is running all the unit tests. When it is finished it will report to you what has passed and failed.

The CLI has several options available for running specific tests, groups of tests or filtering tests against class names of test suites. Run the following command to check out these options.

*Listing 25-5* `$ php run.php -help`

You can run an individual group of tests like this:

*Listing 25-6* `$ php run.php --group data_dict`

## Browser

You can run the unit tests in the browser by navigating to `doctrine/tests/run.php`. Options can be set through `_GET` variables.

For example:

- <http://localhost/doctrine/tests/run.php><sup>153</sup>
- [http://localhost/doctrine/tests/run.php?filter=Limit&group\[\]=query&group\[\]=record](http://localhost/doctrine/tests/run.php?filter=Limit&group[]=query&group[]=record)<sup>154</sup>



Please note that test results may vary depending on your environment. For example if `php.ini` `apc.enable_cli` is set to 0 then some additional tests may fail.

---

## Writing Tests

When writing your test case, you can copy `TemplateTestCase.php` to start off. Here is a sample test case:

*Listing 25-7*

```
class Doctrine_Sample_TestCase extends Doctrine_UnitTestCase
{
    public function prepareTables()
    {
        $this->tables[] = "MyModel1";
        $this->tables[] = "MyModel2";
        parent::prepareTables();
    }

    public function prepareData()
    {
        $this->myModel = new MyModel1();
        //$this->myModel->save();
    }

    public function testInit()
```

---

153. <http://localhost/doctrine/tests/run.php>

154. [http://localhost/doctrine/tests/run.php?filter=Limit&group\[\]=query&group\[\]=record](http://localhost/doctrine/tests/run.php?filter=Limit&group[]=query&group[]=record)

```

    {

    }

    // This produces a failing test
    public function testTest()
    {
        $this->assertTrue($this->myModel->exists());
        $this->assertEqual(0, 1);
        $this->assertIdentical(0, '0');
        $this->assertNotEqual(1, 2);
        $this->assertTrue((5 < 1));
        $this->assertFalse((1 > 2));
    }
}

class Model1 extends Doctrine_Record
{
}

class Model2 extends Doctrine_Record
{
}

```



The model definitions can be included directly in the test case file or they can be put in `/path/to/co/doctrine/tests/models` and they will be autoloaded for you.

---

Once you are finished writing your test be sure to add it to `run.php` like the following.

```
$test->addTestCase(new Doctrine_Sample_TestCase());
```

*Listing  
25-8*

Now when you execute `run.php` you will see the new failure reported to you.

## Ticket Tests

In Doctrine it is common practice to commit a failing test case for each individual ticket that is reported in trac. These test cases are automatically added to `run.php` by reading all test case files found in the `/path/to/co/doctrine/tests/Ticket/` folder.

You can create a new ticket test case easily from the CLI:

```
$ php run.php --ticket 9999
```

*Listing  
25-9*

If the ticket number 9999 doesn't already exist then the blank test case class will be generated for you at `/path/to/co/doctrine/tests/Ticket/9999TestCase.php`.

```

class Doctrine_Ticket_9999_TestCase extends Doctrine_TestCase
{
}

```

*Listing  
25-10*

## Methods for testing

### Assert Equal

Listing  
25-11

```
// ...
    public function test1Equals1()
    {
        $this->assertEqual(1, 1);
    }
// ...
```

### Assert Not Equal

Listing  
25-12

```
// ...
    public function test1DoesNotEqual2()
    {
        $this->assertNotEqual(1, 2);
    }
// ...
```

### Assert Identical

The `assertIdentical()` method is the same as the `assertEqual()` except that its logic is stricter and uses the `===` for comparing the two values.

Listing  
25-13

```
// ...
    public function testAssertIdentical()
    {
        $this->assertIdentical(1, '1');
    }
// ...
```



The above test would fail obviously because the first argument is the number 1 casted as PHP type integer and the second argument is the number 1 casted as PHP type string.

---

### Assert True

Listing  
25-14

```
// ...
    public function testAssertTrue()
    {
        $this->assertTrue(5 > 2);
    }
// ...
```



## Assert False

Listing  
25-15

```
// ...
    public function testAssertFalse()
    {
        $this->assertFalse(5 < 2);
    }
// ...
```

## Mock Drivers

Doctrine uses mock drivers for all drivers other than sqlite. The following code snippet shows you how to use mock drivers:

Listing  
25-16

```
class Doctrine_Sample_TestCase extends Doctrine_UnitTestCase
{
    public function testInit()
    {
        $this->dbh = new Doctrine_Adapter_Mock('oracle');
        $this->conn = Doctrine_Manager::getInstance()->openConnection($this->dbh);
    }
}
```

Now when you execute queries they won't actually be executed against a real database. Instead they will be collected in an array and you will be able to analyze the queries that were executed and make test assertions against them.

Listing  
25-17

```
class Doctrine_Sample_TestCase extends Doctrine_UnitTestCase
{
    // ...

    public function testMockDriver()
    {
        $user = new User();
        $user->username = 'jwage';
        $user->password = 'changeme';
        $user->save();

        $sql = $this->dbh->getAll();

        // print the sql array to find the query you're looking for
        // print_r($sql);

        $this->assertEqual($sql[0], 'INSERT INTO user (username, password) VALUES
(?, ?)');
    }
}
```

## Test Class Guidelines

Every class should have at least one `TestCase` equivalent and they should inherit `Doctrine_UnitTestCase`. Test classes should refer to a class or an aspect of a class, and they should be named accordingly.

Some examples:

- `Doctrine_Record_TestCase` is a good name because it refers to the `Doctrine_Record` class
- `Doctrine_Record_State_TestCase` is also good, because it refers to the state aspect of the `Doctrine_Record` class.
- `Doctrine_PrimaryKey_TestCase` is a bad name, because it's too generic.

## Test Method Guidelines

Methods should support agile documentation and should be named so that if it fails, it is obvious what failed. They should also give information of the system they test

For example the method test name `Doctrine_Export_Pgsql_TestCase::testCreateTableSupportsAutoincPks()` is a good name.

Test method names can be long, but the method content should not be. If you need several assert-calls, divide the method into smaller methods. There should never be assertions within any loops, and rarely within functions.



Commonly used testing method naming convention `TestCase::test[methodName]` is **not** allowed in Doctrine. So in this case `Doctrine_Export_Pgsql_TestCase::testCreateTable()` would not be allowed!

---

## Conclusion

Unit testing in a piece of software like Doctrine is so incredible important. Without it, it would be impossible to know if a change we make has any kind of negative affect on existing working use cases. With our collection of unit tests we can be sure that the changes we make won't break existing functionality.

Now lets move on to learn about how we can improve performance when using Doctrine.

## Chapter 26

# Improving Performance

## Introduction

Performance is a very important aspect of all medium to large sized applications. Doctrine is a large abstraction library that provides a database abstraction layer as well as object-relational mapping. While this provides a lot of benefits like portability and ease of development it's inevitable that this leads to drawbacks in terms of performance. This chapter tries to help you to get the best performance out of Doctrine.

## Compile

Doctrine is quite big framework and usually dozens of files are being included on each request. This brings a lot of overhead. In fact these file operations are as time consuming as sending multiple queries to database server. The clean separation of class per file works well in developing environment, however when project goes commercial distribution the speed overcomes the clean separation of class per file -convention.

Doctrine offers method called `compile()` to solve this issue. The `compile` method makes a single file of most used Doctrine components which can then be included on top of your script. By default the file is created into Doctrine root by the name `Doctrine.compiled.php`.

Compiling is a method for making a single file of most used doctrine runtime components including the compiled file instead of multiple files (in worst cases dozens of files) can improve performance by an order of magnitude. In cases where this might fail, a `Doctrine_Exception` is throw detailing the error.

Lets create a compile script named `compile.php` to handle the compiling of Doctrine:

```
// compile.php

require_once('/path/to/doctrine/lib/Doctrine.php');
spl_autoload_register155(array('Doctrine', 'autoload'));

Doctrine::compile('Doctrine.compiled.php');
```

*Listing  
26-1*

---

<sup>155</sup>. [http://www.php.net/function.spl\\_autoload\\_register](http://www.php.net/function.spl_autoload_register)

Now we can execute `compile.php` and a file named `Doctrine.compiled.php` will be generated in the root of your `doctrine_test` folder:

*Listing 26-2* `$ php compile.php`

If you wish to only compile in the database drivers you are using you can pass an array of drivers as the second argument to `compile()`. For this example we are only using MySQL so lets tell Doctrine to only compile the `mysql` driver:

*Listing 26-3*

```
// compile.php

// ...

Doctrine::compile('Doctrine.compiled.php', array('mysql'));
```

Now you can change your `bootstrap.php` script to include the compiled Doctrine:

*Listing 26-4*

```
// bootstrap.php

// ...

require_once('Doctrine.compiled.php');

// ...
```

## Conservative Fetching

Maybe the most important rule is to be conservative and only fetch the data you actually need. This may sound trivial but laziness or lack of knowledge about the possibilities that are available often lead to a lot of unnecessary overhead.

Take a look at this example:

*Listing 26-5*

```
$record = $table->find($id);
```

How often do you find yourself writing code like that? It's convenient but it's very often not what you need. The example above will pull all columns of the record out of the database and populate the newly created object with that data. This not only means unnecessary network traffic but also means that Doctrine has to populate data into objects that is never used.

I'm sure you all know why a query like the following is not ideal:

*Listing 26-6*

```
SELECT
*
FROM my_table
```

The above is bad in any application and this is also true when using Doctrine. In fact it's even worse when using Doctrine because populating objects with data that is not needed is a waste of time.

Another important rule that belongs in this category is: **Only fetch objects when you really need them.** Doctrine has the ability to fetch "array graphs" instead of object graphs. At first glance this may sound strange because why use an object-relational mapper in the first place then? Take a second to think about it. PHP is by nature a procedural language that has been enhanced with a lot of features for decent OOP. Arrays are still the most efficient data structures you can use in PHP. Objects have the most value when they're used to accomplish complex business logic. It's a waste of resources when data gets wrapped in costly object structures when you have no benefit of that. Take a look at the following code that fetches all comments with some related data for an article, passing them to the view for display afterwards:

*Listing  
26-7*

```
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->select('b.title, b.author, b.created_at')
    ->addSelect('COUNT(t.id) as num_comments')
    ->from('BlogPost b')
    ->leftJoin('b.Comments c')
    ->where('b.id = ?')
    ->orderBy('b.created_at DESC');

$blogPosts = $q->execute(array(1));
```

Now imagine you have a view or template that renders the most recent blog posts:

*Listing  
26-8*

```
<?php foreach ($blogPosts as $blogPost):
    <li>
        <strong>
            <?php echo $blogPost['title']
        </strong>

        - Posted on <?php echo $blogPost['created_at']
        by <?php echo $blogPost['author'] .

        <small>
            (<?php echo $blogPost['num_comments'] )
        </small>
    </li>
<?php endforeach;
```

Can you think of any benefit of having objects in the view instead of arrays? You're not going to execute business logic in the view, are you? One parameter can save you a lot of unnecessary processing:

*Listing  
26-9*

```
// ...

$blogPosts = $q->execute(array(1), Doctrine::HYDRATE_ARRAY);
```

If you prefer you can also use the `setHydrationMethod()` method:

Listing  
26-10

```
// ...  
  
$q->setHydrationMode(Doctrine::HYDRATE_ARRAY);  
  
$blogPosts = $q->execute(array(1));
```

The above code will hydrate the data into arrays instead of objects which is much less expensive.



One great thing about array hydration is that if you use the `ArrayAccess` on your objects you can easily switch your queries to use array hydration and your code will work exactly the same. For example the above code we wrote to render the list of the most recent blog posts would work when we switch the query behind it to array hydration.

Sometimes, you may want the direct output from PDO instead of an object or an array. To do this, set the hydration mode to **`Doctrine::HYDRATE_NONE`**. Here's an example:

Listing  
26-11

```
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()  
    ->select('SUM(d.amount)')  
    ->from('Donation d');  
  
$results = $q->execute(array(), Doctrine::HYDRATE_NONE);
```

You will need to print the results and find the value in the array depending on your DQL query:

Listing  
26-12

```
print_r($results);
```

In this example the result would be accessible with the following code:

Listing  
26-13

```
$total = $results[0][1];
```

## Bundle your Class Files

When using Doctrine or any other large OO library or framework the number of files that need to be included on a regular HTTP request rises significantly. 50-100 includes per request are not uncommon. This has a significant performance impact because it results in a lot of disk operations. While this is generally no issue in a dev environment, it's not suited for production. The recommended way to handle this problem is to bundle the most-used classes of your libraries into a single file for production, stripping out any unnecessary whitespaces, linebreaks and comments. This way you get a significant performance improvement even without a bytecode cache (see next section). The best way to create such a bundle is probably as part of an automated build process i.e. with Phing.

## Use a Bytecode Cache

A bytecode cache like APC will cache the bytecode that is generated by php prior to executing it. That means that the parsing of a file and the creation of the bytecode happens only once and not on every request. This is especially useful when using large libraries and/or frameworks. Together with file bundling for production this should give you a significant performance improvement. To get the most out of a bytecode cache you should contact the manual pages since most of these caches have a lot of configuration options which you can tweak to optimize the cache to your needs.

## Free Objects

As of version 5.2.5, PHP is not able to garbage collect object graphs that have circular references, e.g. Parent has a reference to Child which has a reference to Parent. Since many doctrine model objects have such relations, PHP will not free their memory even when the objects go out of scope.

For most PHP applications, this problem is of little consequence, since PHP scripts tend to be short-lived. Longer-lived scripts, e.g. bulk data importers and exporters, can run out of memory unless you manually break the circular reference chains. Doctrine provides a `free()` function on `Doctrine_Record`, `Doctrine_Collection`, and `Doctrine_Query` which eliminates the circular references on those objects, freeing them up for garbage collection. Usage might look like:

Free objects when mass inserting records:

```
for ($i = 0; $i < 1000; $i++)
{
    $object = createBigObject();
    $object->save();
    $object->free(true);
}
```

*Listing  
26-14*

You can also free query objects in the same way:

```
for ($i = 0; $i < 1000; $i++)
{
    $q = Doctrine_Query::create()
        ->from('User u');

    $results = $q->fetchArray();
    $q->free();
}
```

*Listing  
26-15*

Or even better if you can reuse the same query object for each query in the loop that would be ideal:

```
$q = Doctrine_Query::create()
    ->from('User u');
```

*Listing  
26-16*

```
for ($i = 0; $i < 1000; $i++)
{
    $results = $q->fetchArray();
    $q->free();
}
```

## Other Tips

### Helping the DQL parser

There are two possible ways when it comes to using DQL. The first one is writing the plain DQL queries and passing them to `Doctrine_Connection::query($dql)`. The second one is to use a `Doctrine_Query` object and its fluent interface. The latter should be preferred for all but very simple queries. The reason is that using the `Doctrine_Query` object and its methods makes the life of the DQL parser a little bit easier. It reduces the amount of query parsing that needs to be done and is therefore faster.

### Efficient relation handling

When you want to add a relation between two components you should **NOT** do something like the following:



The following example assumes a many-many between `Role` and `User`.

---

Listing  
26-17

```
$role = new Role();
$role->name = 'New Role Name';

$user->Roles[] = $newRole;
```



The above code will load all roles of the user from the database if they're not yet loaded! Just to add one new link!

---

The following is the recommended way instead:

Listing  
26-18

```
$userRole = new UserRole();
$userRole->role_id = $role_id;
$userRole->user_id = $user_id;
$userRole->save();
```

## Conclusion

Lots of methods exist for improving performance in Doctrine. It is highly recommended that you consider some of the methods described above.



Now lets move on to learn about some of the technology used in Doctrine.

## Chapter 27

# Technology

## Introduction

Doctrine is a product of the work of many people. Not just the people who have coded and documented this software are the only ones responsible for this great framework. Other ORMs in other languages are a major resource for us as we can learn from what they have already done.



Doctrine has also borrowed pieces of code from other open source projects instead of re-inventing the wheel. Two of the projects borrowed from are symfony<sup>156</sup> and the Zend Framework<sup>157</sup>. The relevant license information can be found in the root of Doctrine when you download<sup>158</sup> it in a file named LICENSE.

---

## Architecture

Doctrine is divided into three main packages: CORE, ORM and DBAL. Below is a list of some of the main classes that make up each of the packages.

### Doctrine CORE

- Doctrine
- Doctrine\_Manager
- Doctrine\_Connection
- Doctrine\_Compiler
- Doctrine\_Exception
- Doctrine\_Formatter
- Doctrine\_Object
- Doctrine\_Null
- Doctrine\_Event
- Doctrine\_Overloadable
- Doctrine\_Configurable
- Doctrine\_EventListener

---

156. <http://www.symfony-project.com>

157. <http://framework.zend.com>

158. <http://www.doctrine-project.org>

## Doctrine DBAL

- Doctrine\_Expression\_Driver
- Doctrine\_Export
- Doctrine\_Import
- Doctrine\_Sequence
- Doctrine\_Transaction
- Doctrine\_DataDict

Doctrine DBAL is also divided into driver packages.

## Doctrine ORM

- Doctrine\_Record
- Doctrine\_Table
- Doctrine\_Relation
- Doctrine\_Expression
- Doctrine\_Query
- Doctrine\_RawSql
- Doctrine\_Collection
- Doctrine\_Tokenizer

Other miscellaneous packages.

- Doctrine\_Validator
- Doctrine\_Hook
- Doctrine\_View

There are also behaviors for Doctrine:

- Geographical
- I18n
- NestedSet
- Searchable
- Sluggable
- SoftDelete
- Timestampable
- Versionable

## Design Patterns Used

GoF (Gang of Four) design patterns used:

- Singleton<sup>159</sup>, for forcing only one instance of Doctrine\_Manager
- Composite<sup>160</sup>, for leveled configuration
- Factory<sup>161</sup>, for connection driver loading and many other things
- Observer<sup>162</sup>, for event listening
- Flyweight<sup>163</sup>, for efficient usage of validators
- Iterator<sup>164</sup>, for iterating through components (Tables, Connections, Records etc.)

---

159. <http://www.dofactory.com/Patterns/PatternSingleton.aspx>

160. <http://www.dofactory.com/Patterns/PatternComposite.aspx>

161. <http://www.dofactory.com/Patterns/PatternFactory.aspx>

162. <http://www.dofactory.com/Patterns/PatternObserver.aspx>

163. <http://www.dofactory.com/Patterns/PatternFlyweight.aspx>

164. <http://www.dofactory.com/Patterns/PatternFlyweight.aspx>

- State<sup>165</sup>, for state-wise connections
- Strategy<sup>166</sup>, for algorithm strategies

Enterprise application design patterns used:

- Active Record<sup>167</sup>, Doctrine is an implementation of this pattern
- UnitOfWork<sup>168</sup>, for maintaining a list of objects affected in a transaction
- Identity Field<sup>169</sup>, for maintaining the identity between record and database row
- Metadata Mapping<sup>170</sup>, for Doctrine DataDict
- Dependent Mapping<sup>171</sup>, for mapping in general, since all records extend Doctrine\_Record which performs all mappings
- Foreign Key Mapping<sup>172</sup>, for one-to-one, one-to-many and many-to-one relationships
- Association Table Mapping<sup>173</sup>, for association table mapping (most commonly many-to-many relationships)
- Lazy Load<sup>174</sup>, for lazy loading of objects and object properties
- Query Object<sup>175</sup>, DQL API is actually an extension to the basic idea of Query Object pattern

## Speed

- **Lazy initialization** - For collection elements
- **Subselect fetching** - Doctrine knows how to fetch collections efficiently using a subselect.
- **Executing SQL statements later, when needed** : The connection never issues an INSERT or UPDATE until it is actually needed. So if an exception occurs and you need to abort the transaction, some statements will never actually be issued. Furthermore, this keeps lock times in the database as short as possible (from the late UPDATE to the transaction end).
- **Join fetching** - Doctrine knows how to fetch complex object graphs using joins and subselects
- **Multiple collection fetching strategies** - Doctrine has multiple collection fetching strategies for performance tuning.
- **Dynamic mixing of fetching strategies** - Fetching strategies can be mixed and for example users can be fetched in a batch collection while users' phonenumbers are loaded in offset collection using only one query.
- **Driver specific optimizations** - Doctrine knows things like bulk-insert on mysql.
- **Transactional single-shot delete** - Doctrine knows how to gather all the primary keys of the pending objects in delete list and performs only one sql delete statement per table.
- **Updating only the modified columns.** - Doctrine always knows which columns have been changed.
- **Never inserting/updating unmodified objects.** - Doctrine knows if the the state of the record has changed.

165. <http://www.dofactory.com/Patterns/PatternState.aspx>

166. <http://www.dofactory.com/Patterns/PatternStrategy.aspx>

167. <http://www.martinfowler.com/eaCatalog/activeRecord.html>

168. <http://www.martinfowler.com/eaCatalog/unitOfWork.html>

169. <http://www.martinfowler.com/eaCatalog/identityField.html>

170. <http://www.martinfowler.com/eaCatalog/metadataMapping.html>

171. <http://www.martinfowler.com/eaCatalog/dependentMapping.html>

172. <http://www.martinfowler.com/eaCatalog/foreignKeyMapping.html>

173. <http://www.martinfowler.com/eaCatalog/associationTableMapping.html>

174. <http://www.martinfowler.com/eaCatalog/lazyLoad.html>

175. <http://www.martinfowler.com/eaCatalog/queryObject.html>

- **PDO for database abstraction** - PDO is by far the fastest available database abstraction layer for php.

## Conclusion

This chapter should have given you a complete birds eye view of all the components of Doctrine and how they are organized. Up until now you have seen them all used a part from each other but the separate lists of the three main packages should have made things very clear for you if it was not already.

Now we are ready to move on and learn about how to deal with Doctrine throwing exceptions in the Exceptions and Warnings chapter.

## Chapter 28

# Exceptions and Warnings

## Manager exceptions

`Doctrine_Manager_Exception` is thrown if something failed at the connection management

*Listing  
28-1*

```
try {
    $manager->getConnection('unknown');
} catch (Doctrine_Manager_Exception) {
    // catch errors
}
```

## Relation exceptions

Relation exceptions are being thrown if something failed during the relation parsing.

## Connection exceptions

Connection exceptions are being thrown if something failed at the database level. Doctrine offers fully portable database error handling. This means that whether you are using sqlite or some other database you can always get portable error code and message for the occurred error.

*Listing  
28-2*

```
try {
    $conn->execute('SELECT * FROM unknowntable');
} catch (Doctrine_Connection_Exception $e) {
    echo 'Code : ' . $e->getPortableCode();
    echo 'Message : ' . $e->getPortableMessage();
}
```

## Query exceptions

An exception will be thrown when a query is executed if the DQL query is invalid in some way.

## Conclusion

Now that you know how to deal with Doctrine throwing exceptions lets move on and show you some real world schemas that would be used in common web applications found today on the web.

## Chapter 29

# Real World Examples

## User Management System

In almost all applications you need to have some kind of security or authentication system where you have users, roles, permissions, etc. Below is an example where we setup several models that give you a basic user management and security system.

Listing  
29-1

```
class User extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('username', 'string', 255, array(
            'unique' => true
        ));
        $this->hasColumn('password', 'string', 255);
    }
}

class Role extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('name', 'string', 255);
    }
}

class Permission extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('name', 'string', 255);
    }
}

class RolePermission extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('role_id', 'integer', null, array(
            'primary' => true
        ));
    }
}
```



```

        )
    );
    $this->hasColumn('permission_id', 'integer', null, array(
        'primary' => true
    ))
);
}

public function setUp()
{
    $this->hasOne('Role', array(
        'local' => 'role_id',
        'foreign' => 'id'
    ))
);
    $this->hasOne('Permission', array(
        'local' => 'permission_id',
        'foreign' => 'id'
    ))
);
}

}

class UserRole extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('user_id', 'integer', null, array(
            'primary' => true
        ))
        );
        $this->hasColumn('role_id', 'integer', null, array(
            'primary' => true
        ))
        );
    }

    public function setUp()
    {
        $this->hasOne('User', array(
            'local' => 'user_id',
            'foreign' => 'id'
        ))
        );
        $this->hasOne('Role', array(
            'local' => 'role_id',
            'foreign' => 'id'
        ))
        );
    }
}

class UserPermission extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('user_id', 'integer', null, array(
            'primary' => true

```

```

        )
    );
    $this->hasColumn('permission_id', 'integer', null, array(
        'primary' => true
    ))
    );
}

public function setUp()
{
    $this->hasOne('User', array(
        'local' => 'user_id',
        'foreign' => 'id'
    ))
    );
    $this->hasOne('Permission', array(
        'local' => 'permission_id',
        'foreign' => 'id'
    ))
    );
}
}

```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

*Listing  
29-2*

```

User:
  columns:
    username: string(255)
    password: string(255)
  relations:
    Roles:
      class: Role
      refClass: UserRole
      foreignAlias: Users
    Permissions:
      class: Permission
      refClass: UserPermission
      foreignAlias: Users

Role:
  columns:
    name: string(255)
  relations:
    Permissions:
      class: Permission
      refClass: RolePermission
      foreignAlias: Roles

Permission:
  columns:
    name: string(255)

RolePermission:
  columns:
    role_id:

```

```

        type: integer
        primary: true
    permission_id:
        type: integer
        primary: true
    relations:
        Role:
        Permission:

UserRole:
    columns:
        user_id:
            type: integer
            primary: true
        role_id:
            type: integer
            primary: true
    relations:
        User:
        Role:

UserPermission:
    columns:
        user_id:
            type: integer
            primary: true
        permission_id:
            type: integer
            primary: true
    relations:
        User:
        Permission:

```

## Forum Application

Below is an example of a forum application where you have categories, boards, threads and posts:

```

class Forum_Category extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('root_category_id', 'integer', 10);
        $this->hasColumn('parent_category_id', 'integer', 10);
        $this->hasColumn('name', 'string', 50);
        $this->hasColumn('description', 'string', 99999);
    }

    public function setUp()
    {
        $this->hasMany('Forum_Category as Subcategory', array(
            'local' => 'parent_category_id',
            'foreign' => 'id'
        ))
    }
}

```

*Listing  
29-3*

```

        $this->hasOne('Forum_Category as Rootcategory', array(
            'local' => 'root_category_id',
            'foreign' => 'id'
        ))
    );
}
}

```

```

class Forum_Board extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('category_id', 'integer', 10);
        $this->hasColumn('name', 'string', 100);
        $this->hasColumn('description', 'string', 5000);
    }

    public function setUp()
    {
        $this->hasOne('Forum_Category as Category', array(
            'local' => 'category_id',
            'foreign' => 'id'
        ))
        );
        $this->hasMany('Forum_Thread as Threads', array(
            'local' => 'id',
            'foreign' => 'board_id'
        ))
        );
    }
}

```

```

class Forum_Entry extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('author', 'string', 50);
        $this->hasColumn('topic', 'string', 100);
        $this->hasColumn('message', 'string', 99999);
        $this->hasColumn('parent_entry_id', 'integer', 10);
        $this->hasColumn('thread_id', 'integer', 10);
        $this->hasColumn('date', 'integer', 10);
    }

    public function setUp()
    {
        $this->hasOne('Forum_Entry as Parent', array(
            'local' => 'parent_entry_id',
            'foreign' => 'id'
        ))
        );
        $this->hasOne('Forum_Thread as Thread', array(
            'local' => 'thread_id',
            'foreign' => 'id'
        ))
        );
    }
}

```

```

class Forum_Thread extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('board_id', 'integer', 10);
        $this->hasColumn('updated', 'integer', 10);
        $this->hasColumn('closed', 'integer', 1);
    }

    public function setUp()
    {
        $this->hasOne('Forum_Board as Board', array(
            'local' => 'board_id',
            'foreign' => 'id'
        ));
        $this->ownsMany('Forum_Entry as Entries', array(
            'local' => 'id',
            'foreign' => 'thread_id'
        ));
    }
}

```

Here is the same example in YAML format. You can read more about YAML in the [YAML Schema Files](#) chapter:

```

Forum_Category:
  columns:
    root_category_id: integer(10)
    parent_category_id: integer(10)
    name: string(50)
    description: string(99999)
  relations:
    Subcategory:
      class: Forum_Category
      local: parent_category_id
      foreign: id
    Rootcategory:
      class: Forum_Category
      local: root_category_id
      foreign: id

Forum_Board:
  columns:
    category_id: integer(10)
    name: string(100)
    description: string(5000)
  relations:
    Category:
      class: Forum_Category
      local: category_id
      foreign: id
    Threads:
      class: Forum_Thread

```

*Listing  
29-4*

```
        local: id
        foreign: board_id

Forum_Entry:
    columns:
        author: string(50)
        topic: string(100)
        message: string(99999)
        parent_entry_id: integer(10)
        thread_id: integer(10)
        date: integer(10)
    relations:
        Parent:
            class: Forum_Entry
            local: parent_entry_id
            foreign: id
        Thread:
            class: Forum_Thread
            local: thread_id
            foreign: id

Forum_Thread:
    columns:
        board_id: integer(10)
        updated: integer(10)
        closed: integer(1)
    relations:
        Board:
            class: Forum_Board
            local: board_id
            foreign: id
        Entries:
            class: Forum_Entry
            local: id
            foreign: thread_id
```

## Conclusion

I hope that these real world schema examples will help you with using Doctrine in the real world in your application. The last chapter of this book will discuss the coding standards used in Doctrine and are recommended for you to use in your application as well. Remember, consistency in your code is key!

## Chapter 30

# Coding Standards

## PHP File Formatting

### General

For files that contain only PHP code, the closing tag ("?>") is never permitted. It is not required by PHP. Not including it prevents trailing whitespace from being accidentally injected into the output.



Inclusion of arbitrary binary data as permitted by `__HALT_COMPILER()` is prohibited from any Doctrine framework PHP file or files derived from them. Use of this feature is only permitted for special installation scripts.

---

### Indentation

Use an indent of 4 spaces, with no tabs.

### Maximum Line Length

The target line length is 80 characters, i.e. developers should aim keep code as close to the 80-column boundary as is practical. However, longer lines are acceptable. The maximum length of any line of PHP code is 120 characters.

### Line Termination

Line termination is the standard way for Unix text files to represent the end of a line. Lines must end only with a linefeed (LF). Linefeeds are represented as ordinal 10, or hexadecimal 0x0A.

You should not use carriage returns (CR) like Macintosh computers (0x0D) and do not use the carriage return/linefeed combination (CRLF) as Windows computers (0x0D, 0x0A).

# Naming Conventions

## Classes

The Doctrine ORM Framework uses the same class naming convention as PEAR and Zend framework, where the names of the classes directly map to the directories in which they are stored. The root level directory of the Doctrine Framework is the "Doctrine/" directory, under which all classes are stored hierarchially.

Class names may only contain alphanumeric characters. Numbers are permitted in class names but are discouraged. Underscores are only permitted in place of the path separator, eg. the filename "Doctrine/Table/Exception.php" must map to the class name "Doctrine\_Table\_Exception".

If a class name is comprised of more than one word, the first letter of each new word must be capitalized. Successive capitalized letters are not allowed, e.g. a class "XML\_Reader" is not allowed while "Xml\_Reader" is acceptable.

## Interfaces

Interface classes must follow the same conventions as other classes (see above).

They must also end with the word "Interface" (unless the interface is approved not to contain it such as `Doctrine_Overloadable`). Some examples:

### Examples

- `Doctrine_Adapter_Interface`
- `Doctrine_EventListener_Interface`

## Filenames

For all other files, only alphanumeric characters, underscores, and the dash character ("-") are permitted. Spaces are prohibited.

Any file that contains any PHP code must end with the extension ".php". These examples show the acceptable filenames for containing the class names from the examples in the section above:

- `Doctrine/Adapter/Interface.php`
- `Doctrine/EventListener/Interface`

File names must follow the mapping to class names described above.

## Functions and Methods

Function names may only contain alphanumeric characters and underscores are not permitted. Numbers are permitted in function names but are highly discouraged. They must always start with a lowercase letter and when a function name consists of more than one word, the first letter of each new word must be capitalized. This is commonly called the "studlyCaps" or "camelCaps" method. Verbosity is encouraged and function names should be as verbose as is practical to enhance the understandability of code.

For object-oriented programming, accessors for objects should always be prefixed with either "get" or "set". This applies to all classes except for `Doctrine_Record` which has some accessor methods prefixed with 'obtain' and 'assign'. The reason for this is that since all user defined ActiveRecord inherit `Doctrine_Record`, it should populate the get / set namespace as little as possible.





Functions in the global scope ("floating functions") are NOT permitted. All static functions should be wrapped in a static class.

## Variables

Variable names may only contain alphanumeric characters. Underscores are not permitted. Numbers are permitted in variable names but are discouraged. They must always start with a lowercase letter and follow the "camelCaps" capitalization convention. Verbosity is encouraged. Variables should always be as verbose as practical. Terse variable names such as "\$i" and "\$n" are discouraged for anything other than the smallest loop contexts. If a loop contains more than 20 lines of code, the variables for the indices need to have more descriptive names. Within the framework certain generic object variables should always use the following names:

Object type	Variable name
Doctrine_Connection	\$conn
Doctrine_Collection	\$coll
Doctrine_Manager	\$manager
Doctrine_Query	\$q

There are cases when more descriptive names are more appropriate (for example when multiple objects of the same class are used in same context), in that case it is allowed to use different names than the ones mentioned.

## Constants

Constants may contain both alphanumeric characters and the underscore. They must always have all letters capitalized. For readability reasons, words in constant names must be separated by underscore characters. For example, `ATTR_EXC_LOGGING` is permitted but `ATTR_EXCLOGGING` is not. Constants must be defined as class members by using the "const" construct. Defining constants in the global scope with "define" is NOT permitted.

Listing  
30-1

```
class Doctrine_SomeClass
{
    const MY_CONSTANT = 'something';
}

echo $Doctrine_SomeClass::MY_CONSTANT;
```

## Record Columns

All record columns must be in lowercase and usage of underscores(\_) are encouraged for columns that consist of more than one word.

Listing  
30-2

```
class User
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('home_address', 'string');
```

```

    }
}

```

Foreign key fields must be in format [table\_name]\_[column]. The next example is a field that is a foreign key that points to user(id):

*Listing  
30-3*

```

class Phonenummer extends Doctrine_Record
{
    public function setTableDefinition()
    {
        $this->hasColumn('user_id', 'integer');
    }
}

```

## Coding Style

### PHP Code Demarcation

PHP code must always be delimited by the full-form, standard PHP tags and short tags are never allowed. For files containing only PHP code, the closing tag must always be omitted

### Strings

When a string is literal (contains no variable substitutions), the apostrophe or "single quote" must always be used to demarcate the string:

#### Literal String

*Listing  
30-4*

```
$string = 'something';
```

When a literal string itself contains apostrophes, it is permitted to demarcate the string with quotation marks or "double quotes". This is especially encouraged for SQL statements:

#### String Containing Apostrophes

*Listing  
30-5*

```
$sql = "SELECT id, name FROM people WHERE name = 'Fred' OR name = 'Susan'";
```

### Variable Substitution

Variable substitution is permitted using the following form:

*Listing  
30-6*

```
// variable substitution
```

```
$greeting = "Hello $name, welcome back!";
```

## String Concatenation

Strings may be concatenated using the "." operator. A space must always be added before and after the "." operator to improve readability:

```
$framework = 'Doctrine' . ' ORM ' . 'Framework';
```

*Listing  
30-7*

## Concatenation Line Breaking

When concatenating strings with the "." operator, it is permitted to break the statement into multiple lines to improve readability. In these cases, each successive line should be padded with whitespace such that the "." operator is aligned under the "=" operator:

```
$sql = "SELECT id, name FROM user "  
      . "WHERE name = ? "  
      . "ORDER BY name ASC";
```

*Listing  
30-8*

## Arrays

Negative numbers are not permitted as indices and a indexed array may be started with any non-negative number, however this is discouraged and it is recommended that all arrays have a base index of 0. When declaring indexed arrays with the array construct, a trailing space must be added after each comma delimiter to improve readability. It is also permitted to declare multiline indexed arrays using the "array" construct. In this case, each successive line must be padded with spaces. When declaring associative arrays with the array construct, it is encouraged to break the statement into multiple lines. In this case, each successive line must be padded with whitespace such that both the keys and the values are aligned:

```
$sampleArray = array('Doctrine', 'ORM', 1, 2, 3);  
  
$sampleArray = array(1, 2, 3,  
                    $a, $b, $c,  
                    56.44, $d, 500);  
  
$sampleArray = array('first' => 'firstValue',  
                    'second' => 'secondValue');
```

*Listing  
30-9*

## Classes

Classes must be named by following the naming conventions. The brace is always written next line after the class name (or interface declaration). Every class must have a documentation block that conforms to the PHPDocumentor standard. Any code within a class must be indented four spaces and only one class is permitted per PHP file. Placing additional code in a class file is NOT permitted.

This is an example of an acceptable class declaration:

Listing  
30-10

```
/**
 * Documentation here
 */
class Doctrine_SampleClass
{
    // entire content of class
    // must be indented four spaces
}
```

## Functions and Methods

Methods must be named by following the naming conventions and must always declare their visibility by using one of the private, protected, or public constructs. Like classes, the brace is always written next line after the method name. There is no space between the function name and the opening parenthesis for the arguments. Functions in the global scope are strongly discouraged. This is an example of an acceptable function declaration in a class:

Listing  
30-11

```
/**
 * Documentation Block Here
 */
class Foo
{
    /**
     * Documentation Block Here
     */
    public function bar()
    {
        // entire content of function
        // must be indented four spaces
    }

    public function bar2()
    {

    }
}
```



Functions must be separated by only ONE single new line like is done above between the `bar()` and `bar2()` methods.

---

Passing by-reference is permitted in the function declaration only:

Listing  
30-12

```
/**
 * Documentation Block Here
 */
class Foo
{
```

```

/**
 * Documentation Block Here
 */
public function bar(&$baz)
{
}

```

Call-time pass by-reference is prohibited. The return value must not be enclosed in parentheses. This can hinder readability and can also break code if a method is later changed to return by reference.

*Listing  
30-13*

```

/**
 * Documentation Block Here
 */
class Foo
{
    /**
     * WRONG
     */
    public function bar() {
        return($this->bar);
    }

    /**
     * RIGHT
     */
    public function bar()
    {
        return $this->bar;
    }
}

```

Function arguments are separated by a single trailing space after the comma delimiter. This is an example of an acceptable function call for a function that takes three arguments:

*Listing  
30-14*

```
threeArguments(1, 2, 3);
```

Call-time pass by-reference is prohibited. See above for the proper way to pass function arguments by-reference. For functions whose arguments permitted arrays, the function call may include the array construct and can be split into multiple lines to improve readability. In these cases, the standards for writing arrays still apply:

*Listing  
30-15*

```
threeArguments(array(1, 2, 3), 2, 3);

threeArguments(array(1, 2, 3, 'Framework',
                    'Doctrine', 56.44, 500), 2, 3);
```

## Control Statements

Control statements based on the if and elseif constructs must have a single space before the opening parenthesis of the conditional, and a single space after the closing parenthesis. Within the conditional statements between the parentheses, operators must be separated by spaces for readability. Inner parentheses are encouraged to improve logical grouping of larger conditionals. The opening brace is written on the same line as the conditional statement. The closing brace is always written on its own line. Any content within the braces must be indented four spaces.

*Listing  
30-16*

```
if ($foo != 2) {  
    $foo = 2;  
}
```

For if statements that include elseif or else, the formatting must be as in these examples:

*Listing  
30-17*

```
if ($foo != 1) {  
    $foo = 1;  
} else {  
    $foo = 3;  
}  
  
if ($foo != 2) {  
    $foo = 2;  
} elseif ($foo == 1) {  
    $foo = 3;  
} else {  
    $foo = 11;  
}
```

When ! operand is being used it must use the following formatting:

*Listing  
30-18*

```
if ( ! $foo) {  
  
}
```

Control statements written with the switch construct must have a single space before the opening parenthesis of the conditional statement, and also a single space after the closing parenthesis. All content within the switch statement must be indented four spaces. Content under each case statement must be indented an additional four spaces but the breaks must be at the same indentation level as the case statements.

*Listing  
30-19*

```
switch ($case) {  
    case 1:  
    case 2:  
    break;  
    case 3:
```

```
        break;
    default:
        break;
}
```

The construct `default` may never be omitted from a `switch` statement.

## Inline Documentation

Documentation Format:

All documentation blocks ("docblocks") must be compatible with the phpDocumentor format. Describing the phpDocumentor format is beyond the scope of this document. For more information, visit: <http://phpdoc.org><sup>176</sup>

Every method, must have a docblock that contains at a minimum:

- A description of the function
- All of the arguments
- All of the possible return values
- It is not necessary to use the `@access` tag because the access level is already known from the `public`, `private`, or `protected` construct used to declare the function.

If a function/method may throw an exception, use `@throws`:

```
/*
 * Test function
 *
 * @throws Doctrine_Exception
 */
public function test()
{
    throw new Doctrine_Exception('This function did not work');
}
```

*Listing  
30-20*

## Conclusion

This is the last chapter of *Doctrine ORM for PHP - Guide to Doctrine for PHP*. I really hope that this book was a useful piece of documentation and that you are now comfortable with using Doctrine and will be able to come back to easily reference things as needed.

As always, follow the Doctrine :)

Thanks, Jon

---

<sup>176</sup>. <http://phpdoc.org/>